



## **Cisco TelePresence Manager Release 1.5 Administration and Installation Guide**

Release1.5 February 25, 2009

#### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc. 170 West Tasman Drive San Jose, CA 95134-1706 USA http://www.cisco.com Tel: 408 526-4000 800 553-NETS (6387) Fax: 408 527-0883

Text Part Number: OL-13673-04

### **REVIEW DRAFT-CISCO CONFIDENTIAL**

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

CCDE, CCENT, Cisco Eos, Cisco HealthPresence, the Cisco logo, Cisco Lumin, Cisco Nexus, Cisco StadiumVision, Cisco TelePresence, Cisco WebEx, DCE, and Welcome to the Human Network are trademarks; Changing the Way We Work, Live, Play, and Learn and Cisco Store are service marks; and Access Registrar, Aironet, AsyncOS, Bringing the Meeting To You, Catalyst, CCDA, CCDP, CCIE, CCIP, CCNA, CCNP, CCSP, CCVP, Cisco, the Cisco Certified Internetwork Expert logo, Cisco IOS, Cisco Press, Cisco Systems, Cisco Systems Capital, the Cisco Systems logo, Cisco Unity, Collaboration Without Limitation, EtherFast, EtherSwitch, Event Center, Fast Step, Follow Me Browsing, FormShare, GigaDrive, HomeLink, Internet Quotient, IOS, iPhone, iQuick Study, IronPort, the IronPort logo, LightStream, Linksys, MediaTone, MeetingPlace, MeetingPlace Chime Sound, MGX, Networkers, Networking Academy, Network Registrar, PCNow, PIX, PowerPanels, ProConnect, ScriptShare, SenderBase, SMARTnet, Spectrum Expert, StackWise, The Fastest Way to Increase Your Internet Quotient, TransPath, WebEx, and the WebEx logo are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, in the United States and certain other countries.

All other trademarks mentioned in this document or website are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (0812R)

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

Cisco TelePresence Manager Release 1.5 © 2009 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



### CONTENTS

### Preface i

Obtaining Documentation, Obtaining Support, and Security Guidelines i Audience and Scope i

### End User License Agreement ix

CHAPTER <b>1</b>	General Information about the Cisco TelePresence Manager 1-1				
	Contents 1-1				
	Overview of the CTS-Manager Administration Guide 1-2				
	Terminology 1-3				
	Introduction to the Cisco TelePresence System 1-3				
	Taking Point-to-Point Cisco TelePresence calls 1-4				
	CTS Endpoints 1-4				
	Components of the Cisco TelePresence System 1-4				
	Cisco TelePresence Manager Product Specifications 1-5				
	Installation Procedures Guideline 1-6				
CHAPTER <b>2</b>	Pre-Install System Set Up for Cisco TelePresence Manager 2-1				
	Contents 2-1				
	Introduction 2-1				
	System Components and Versions 2-1				
	Pre-Installation Procedure Guidelines for Initial Network Set-up 2-2				
CHAPTER <b>3</b>	Configuring Microsoft Exchange for Cisco TelePresence Manager 3-1				
	Contents 3-1				
	Introduction 3-1				
	Pre-Configuration Set-Up Guidelines <b>3-2</b>				
	Configuring Microsoft Exchange for CTS-Manager <b>3-2</b>				
	Deploying with Microsoft Exchange 2003 <b>3-3</b>				
	Deploying with Microsoft Exchange 2007 <b>3-4</b>				
	Migrating from Exchange 2003 to Exchange 2007 <b>3-7</b>				

CHAPTER <b>4</b>	Configuring IBM Domino Server for Cisco TelePresence Manager 4-1 Contents 4-1			
	Introduction 4-1			
	Important Considerations 4-1			
	Pre-Configuration Procedure Guidelines for IBM Domino Set-up 4-2			
	Configuring IBM Domino for CTS-Manager 4-2			
	Directory Assistance in a Domino Deployment <b>4-3</b>			
CHAPTER 5	Configuring Cisco Unified CM for Cisco TelePresence Manager 5-1			
	Contents 5-1			
	Introduction 5-1			
	Important Considerations 5-1			
	Pre-Configuration Procedure Guidelines for Cisco Unified CM Set-up 5-2			
	Configuring Cisco Unified CM for CTS-Manager 5-2 For Deployments Using Microsoft Exchange 2003, 2007, and IBM Domino 5-3 Configuring Cisco Unified CM Server Names 5-4			
	Logging into the Cisco Unified CM Administrator 5-5 Configuring the Options File 5-5 Adding a Cisco TelePresence Device 5-6 Download Device Packs 5-6 Install the Device 5-6 Creating and Configuring a Cisco TelePresence Device 5-7			
	Adding a New Phone as a Cisco TelePresence Device 5-7			
	Finding a Phone 5-7			
	Configuring Cisco TelePresence Devices 5-8			
	Before You Begin 5-8			
	Device Information 5-8			
CHAPTER 6	Installing and Configuring Cisco PreQualification Assistant 6-1			
	Contents 6-1			
	Introduction 6-1			
	Pre-Configuration Procedure Guidelines for Checking Initial Network Set-up 6-2			
	Installing the PreQualification Assistant Tool <b>6-3</b> Running the Tool - Using the Tool Application Window <b>6-6</b>			
	Menu Commands 6-7			
	File Menu Commands 6-7			
	System Menu Command 6-7			

Cisco TelePresence Manager 1.5 Administration and Installation Guide

Test Configuration Forms Window 6-8
Test Status Window 6-9
Using Test Configuration Forms 6-10
Cisco Unified CM Test Configuration Form 6-10
Test(s) Enabled by this Test Configuration Form 6-10
Test Configuration Forms in a Generic Environment 6-11
LDAP (Generic) Test Configuration Form 6-11
Test Configuration Forms in a Microsoft Exchange Environment 6-13
LDAP Server (Active Directory) Test Configuration Form 6-13
Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange) Test Configuration Form 6-15
Test Configuration Forms in an IBM Domino Environment 6-17
LDAP (Domino Directory) Test Configuration Form 6-17
Calendar Server (IBM Domino) Test Configuration Form 6-19
Installing or Upgrading Cisco TelePresence Manager 7-1
Contents 7-1

Introduction 7-1
System Information 7-2
Installation Guidelines 7-2
Installing Cisco TelePresence Manager from DVD 7-3
Required Information and Equipment 7-3
Introduction to the CTS-Manager Administration Software 7-4
Logging Into CTS-Manager 7-4
Administrator Role 7-4
Superuser Role 7-4
Concierge Role 7-5
Installation Procedure for Cisco TelePresence Manager 7-5
Installation Field Values Defined 7-5
Recovering Administrator and Security Passwords 7-8
Recovery procedure 1: 7-8
Recovery procedure 2: 7-9
Dashboard for Verification of Installation Status 7-9
System Log Error Detection 7-11
System Log 7-11
Software Upgrade 7-12
Upgrading to Cisco TelePresence Manager 1.5 7-13
Switch Version 7-14
Upgrade Software 7-14

L

CHAPTER 7

	Cisco TelePresence Manager Window 7-20 Header Pane 7-20 System Status Pane 7-21 Navigation Pane 7-22 Work Pane 7-23		
	Preferences 7-24		
CHAPTER 8	Initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager 8-1		
	Contents 8-1		
	Introduction 8-1		
	Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN 8-2		
	Initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager After Installation 8-3		
	Required Information and Equipment 8-3		
	Initialization Procedure 8-3		
	Initialization for Microsoft Exchange Deployments 8-3		
	Explanation of LDAP Access Setting Fields 8-5		
	LDAP User Authorization Setting Fields 8-7		
	Explanation of Field Mappings Fields 8-7		
	Explanation of Cisco Unified Communications Manager Fields 8-9		
	Explanation of Microsoft Exchange Fields 8-10 Explanation of Database Backup Schedule Fields 8-11		
	Microsoft Exchange Calendar Service Window 8-12 Re-sync Operations 8-14		
	Initialization for IBM Domino Deployments 8-15		
	Explanation of LDAP Access Setting Fields 8-17 Explanation of LDAP User Auth Setting Fields 8-18		
	Explanation of LDAP User Auth Setting Fields 8-18 Explanation of Field Mappings Fields 8-19		
	Explanation of Cisco Unified Communications Manager Fields 8-20 Explanation of IBM Domino Fields 8-21		
CHAPTER 9	Additional Installation Configurations for Cisco TelePresence Manager 9-1		
	Contents 9-1		
	Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN 9-2		
	Introduction 9-3		
	Security Settings 9-3		
	Web Services Security 9-4		
	Digital Security Certificates 9-4		
	Generating Security Certificate Reports 9-5		

**Viewing Security Certificates** 9-5 **Deleting Security Certificates** 9-5 Uploading Security Certificates 9-5 LDAP Server 9-6 Settings for LDAP 9-6 Multiple LDAP Peer Domains 9-7 Field Mappings 9-8 Microsoft Exchange Deployments 9-8 Verifying Field Mapping Data 9-9 IBM Domino Deployment s 9-10 Password 9-12 Calendar Server 9-12 Microsoft Exchange 9-17 **Re-sync Operations** 9-19 IBM Domino 9-20 **Re-sync Operations** 9-22 System Settings 9-23 IP Setting 9-23 NTP Setting 9-25 SNMP Setting 9-25 Technical Notes 9-27 Database - Status, Backup, and Restore 9-28 Settings 9-28 Backup 9-29 Changing the Backup Schedule 9-30 Backing Up Database Files 9-31 Remote Storage Host Fields 9-31 Restore 9-32 Restoring Backup Data 9-33 Discovery Service 9-34 MCU Devices 9-35 Access Management 9-37 Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch (CTMS) 9-38 Adding a CTMS 9-38 Editing CTMS Settings 9-39 Cisco Unified Video Conferencing (CUVC) 9-39 Adding a CUVC 9-39 Editing CUVC Settings 9-40

CHAPTER 10

Concierges 9-41
Concierge Role 9-41
Creating Concierges 9-42
Assigning a Room to a Specific Concierge 9-43
Policy Management 9-44
Remote Account 9-46
System Configuration - System Settings 9-47
Application Settings 9-48
Interoperability with Video Conferencing Settings 9-48
Intercompany Setting 9-48
Meeting Notification Email Settings 9-49
CTS-Manager Redundancy Failover Procedure 9-49
Cold Standby 9-49
Warm Standby 9-51
CTS-MAN Redundancy Failover Procedure 9-51
CTMS Redundancy Failover Procedure 9-52
Monitoring Cisco TelePresence Manager 10-1
Contents 10-1
Introduction 10-2
Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN 10-2
Scheduled Meetings 10-3
Process/Response Times for Scheduled Meetings 10-4
Modifying Meeting Details from a Calendar Client <b>10-4</b>
Calendar Scheduling Limitation 10-4
Generating Scheduled Meeting Reports <b>10-4</b>
Exporting Scheduled Meeting Data 10-5
Meeting Details 10-6
Rooms 10-6
Manually Updating Room Schedules on the Cisco TelePresence Room Phone <b>10-9</b>
Viewing Scheduled Meetings for a Specific Room <b>10-9</b>
MCU Devices 10-12
Summary Tab 10-12
Generating Multipoint Conference Unit Reports <b>10-12</b>
Capability Tab 10-16
Cisco Unified Communications Manager 10-18

CHAPTER 11	CTS-MAN Emails and End-User Web UI 11-1
	Contents 11-1
	Introduction 11-2
	Point-to-Point Meetings 11-2
	Multipoint Meetings 11-4
	Action Required Email 11-6
	Confirmation Meeting Details Window 11-8
	Meeting Details 11-8
	Occurrence Details Pane 11-9
	Meeting Options Tab 11-10
	Interoperability Options 11-12
	Intercompany Host Meeting Options 11-14
	Intercompany Participant Meeting Options <b>11-15</b>
	Action Required - Meeting Details Window 11-15
CHAPTER <b>12</b>	
	Contents 12-1
	Introduction 12-2
	MIB Support 12-2
CHAPTER 13	Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager 13-1
	Contents 13-1
	Introduction 13-2
	System Log 13-2
	Log Files 13-3
	Download All Files 13-5
	Scheduled Meeting and Room Issues 13-5
	IP Phone User Interface Issues 13-12
	Cisco TelePresence Manager Database Issues 13-13
	Multipoint Conference Unit (MCU) Issues 13-13
	Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Unified CM) Issues 13-14
	Calendar Server and LDAP Interface Issues 13-14
	LDAP Server Issues 13-15
	Microsoft Euchenge Calender Convertionuss 40 45
	Microsoft Exchange Calendar Server Issues 13-15
	IBM Domino Calendar Server Issues 13-18

L

Safe ActiveX Checking Message 13-20 System Error Messages 13-21 

# **Preface**

Revised: February 25, 2009, OL-13673-04

# **Obtaining Documentation, Obtaining Support, and Security Guidelines**

For information on obtaining documentation, submitting a service request, and gathering additional information, see the monthly *What's New in Cisco Product Documentation*, which also lists all new and revised Cisco technical documentation, at:

http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/general/whatsnew/whatsnew.html

Subscribe to the *What's New in Cisco Product Documentation* as a Really Simple Syndication (RSS) feed and set content to be delivered directly to your desktop using a reader application. The RSS feeds are a free service and Cisco currently supports RSS version 2.0.

# **Audience and Scope**

The *Cisco TelePresence Manager Administration and Installation Guide* is directed to the administrator that configures, monitors, and maintains the Cisco TelePresence Manager application, and troubleshoots problems that may occur.

ii



# **End User License Agreement**

#### Revised: February 25, 2009, OL-13673-04

Note

It is important that you read and understand the conditions of the end user license agreement. Downloading, installing, and using Cisco and Cisco-supplied software constitute acceptance of the agreement.

You can display the end user license agreement from two places, the login window and the About window.

Figure 1 Cisco TelePresence Manager Login Screen









# General Information about the Cisco TelePresence Manager

Revised: June 11, 2009, OL-13673-04

# **Contents**

- Overview of the CTS-Manager Administration Guide, page 1-2
  - Terminology, page 1-3
- Introduction to the Cisco TelePresence System, page 1-3
  - Taking Point-to-Point Cisco TelePresence calls, page 1-4
  - Components of the Cisco TelePresence System, page 1-4
- Installation Procedures Guideline, page 1-6

## **Overview of the CTS-Manager Administration Guide**

Table 1-1 give a brief description of the contents of each chapter in the Administration Guide.

**Chapter Title** Description Chapter 1 This chapter provides a general description of hardware and software components used within the Cisco TelePresence General Information About the Manager system. It includes overviews of Point-to-Point calls, Cisco TelePresence Manager meeting scheduling, multipoint calls, Interoperability with legacy endpoints, and Intercompany Cisco TelePresence calls and administration roles. This chapter describes the pre-setup and installation features for Chapter 2 CTS-Manager. Pre-Install Set Up for **CTS-Manager** Chapter 3 This chapter covers the steps needed to configure either Microsoft Exchange 2003 or 2007 and Active Directory. Configuring Microsoft Exchange Chapter 4 This document covers the steps needed to configure IBM Domino and Domino Directory Server for the CTS Manager Configuring IBM Domino and system. Domino Server Chapter 5 This chapter describes adding parameters to Cisco Unified Communications Manager and gathering Configuring CUCM for CTS information from the current installation of Manager Cisco Unified Communications Manager that will be used to configure the Cisco TelePresence Manager during installation. Chapter 6 This chapter explains how to install and run the Cisco TelePresence Manager PreQualification Assistant tool. Installing and Configuring PreQualification Assistant Tool It is important to install and run the pre-qualification assistant to ensure that the pre-installation set up is performed correctly. Chapter 7 Describes how to install or upgrade CTS Manager. Installing or Upgrading CTS Manager Chapter 8 The final process is initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager to enable access to information sources such as Microsoft Initializing CTS Manager Exchange Server for meeting requests from Microsoft Outlook, Active Directory for accessing user and conference room information, and Cisco Unified Communications Manager for conference room availability and telephone support. Chapter 9 Describes the configuration features available when you log into CTS-Manager using an Administrator role. Installing Additional Configurations for CTS Manager Chapter 10 Describes the monitoring and support features available when you log into CTS-Manager using a Concierge role. Monitoring CTS Manager

Table 1-1 Administration Guide Chapter Descriptions

Chapter Title	Description	
Chapter 11	Describes the different email notifications and meeting details window available to Meeting Organizers.	
CTS-MAN Emails and End-User Web UI		
Chapter 12	Provides the MIBs used by the CTS Manager.	
Supported MIBs for CTS Manager		
Chapter 13	Provides troubleshooting information for CTS-Manager	
Troubleshooting	Administrators.	
Appendix A - removed	This section has been moved to Chapter 6.	
CTS-Manager Pre-Qualifying Tool		
CTS-Manager CLI Command Set (formerly Chapter 7) - removed	This chapter has been removed and is now a separate CLI book set.	

#### Table 1-1 Administration Guide Chapter Descriptions

### Terminology

The following terms are used in this guide:

• Audio call: An audio call refers to a call placed to or from an audio-only telephone for the purpose of conferencing the audio call into a Cisco TelePresence meeting.



Audio calls are placed or answered with the CTS phone's handset on-hook.

- Cisco TelePresence call: A Cisco TelePresence call is placed between two or more CTS endpoints.
- Cisco TelePresence meeting: A Cisco TelePresence meeting refers to two or more endpoints connected by a Cisco TelePresence call.
- Conference: A conference refers to a Cisco TelePresence meeting that includes an audio call.
- CUVC Cisco Unified Video Conferencing
- Endpoint: An endpoint, or 'CTS endpoint' refers to the combination of hardware and software that comprise a Cisco TelePresence System. Examples of a CTS endpoint are the CTS-3200 and the CTS-500. CTS endpoints are also referred to as Cisco TelePresence rooms, in the case of a CTS-3000 or CTS-3200 endpoint.
- LDAP Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
- MCU Multipoint Conference Unit

## Introduction to the Cisco TelePresence System

The Cisco TelePresence System is composed of several hardware and software components. The Cisco TelePresence System also gets information and services with peripheral components such as Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Unified CM), and calendar services such as Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino. Together all the peripheral and CTS components offer the features and services needed to schedule, place, and manage Cisco TelePresence calls and maintain all the Cisco TelePresence System components.

The following sections provide a general overview of the components that make up the Cisco TelePresence System.

## **Taking Point-to-Point Cisco TelePresence calls**

Placing a call between two CTS endpoints is similar to making a simple audio call. If you know the phone number of the endpoint you can dial it directly using the CTS IP phone.

### **CTS Endpoints**

There are four CTS endpoint models supported by Cisco Unified CM.

- **CTS-500** For data sheets and other product literature refer to the product page. For hardware installation information refer to the Cisco TelePresence System 500 Assembly, Use & Care, and Field-replaceable Unit Guide.
- **CTS-1000** For data sheets and other product literature refer to the product page. For hardware installation information refer to the Cisco TelePresence System 1000 Assembly, Use & Care, and Field-replaceable Unit Guide.
- **CTS-1300** For data sheets and other product literature refer to the product page. For hardware installation information refer to the Cisco TelePresence System 1300 Assembly, Use & Care, and Field-replaceable Unit Guide.
- **CTS-3000** For data sheets and other product literature refer to the product page. For hardware installation information refer to the Cisco TelePresence System 3000 Assembly, Use & Care, and Field-replaceable Unit Guide.
- **CTS-3200** For data sheets and other product literature refer to the product page. For hardware installation information refer to the Cisco TelePresence System 3200 Assembly, Use & Care, and Field-replaceable Unit Guide.

Each endpoint is configured and maintained through Unified CM and the CTS Administration software. The CTS Administration software is installed on each endpoint and is accessible by browser. All Cisco TelePresence Administration software supports Internet Explorer 6.0. For information about installing, configuring, and maintaining CTS endpoints refer to the CTS Administrator's Guide.

### **Components of the Cisco TelePresence System**

In order to schedule meetings in advance you need to include CTS Manager in your Cisco TelePresence system. CTS Manager works with Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino servers to schedule Cisco TelePresence meeting rooms and enable One -Button -To -Push meeting access.

CTS Manager communicates with the following components:

- **CTS endpoints** CTS-Manager polls endpoints and reports errors to your CTS-Manager Administrator. CTS-Manager also pushes an endpoint's meeting schedule to the endpoint's IP phone.
- **Cisco Unified CM** CTS-Manager works with Cisco Unified CM to maintain current configurations for each endpoint, and to discover new endpoints as they are added to your Cisco TelePresence system.

- Calendar server (Exchange or Domino) Each CTS endpoint has a corresponding mailbox on a calendar server to support scheduling through Outlook or Lotus Notes. CTS-Manager monitors endpoint calendars and reports errors. CTS-Manager also uses the scheduling information to push meeting schedules to each CTS endpoint IP phone.
- Active Directory Each CTS endpoint's room ID is stored in Active Directory. CTS-Manager is the conduit between Active Directory and an endpoint.
- **Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch (CTMS)** A CTMS provides the resources for multipoint (three or more endpoints) calls, Multipoint Conference Units (MCUs). CTS-Manager reports errors with a CTMS and specifies which CTMS is used for each Cisco TelePresence meeting. Cisco TelePresence supports the ability to conference existing standards-based video conference sessions into a Cisco TelePresence meeting by integrating the Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch (CTMS) with Cisco Unified Video conferencing Systems (CUVC). This provides interoperability with virtually all standards-based video conferencing systems installed today.
- For data sheets and other product literature refer to the product page. For hardware installation and CTMS maintenance refer to the Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch administration guide.

# **Cisco TelePresence Manager Product Specifications**

Table 1-2 gives product specifications and Table 1-3 provides system requirements of the Cisco TelePresence Manager. Table 1-4 provides the flow of tasks you need follow to install the CTS\_MAN system.

Specifications	Description	
Product compatibility	Cisco MCS 7845-H2 and MCS 7845-I2 Media Convergence Servers	
Software compatibility	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0	
	NoteCTS Manager Release 1.5 does not support Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.x.	
Protocols	HTTP, HTTPS, Administrative XML (AXL)/SOAP, Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), and CTI	
Connectivity	IP	
Reliability and availability	High availability through Cisco 7845 Media Convergence Server platform	

Table 1-2Product Specifications

Specifications	Description	
Groupware connectivity	• Microsoft Exchange Server: 2003 (\Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition) and 2007 (on Windows 2003 Enterprise Edition SP2 [64 bit])	
	• Microsoft Outlook Client: 2003 and 2007	
	• IBM Domino Server: 8.0 and 7.0.0 (Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition)	
	• IBM Notes Client: 8.0, 7.0.0, and 6.5.0	
Cisco Unified Communications Manager version	Cisco Unified CM 6.1.3 or later	
Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) connectivity	Active Directory 2003, running on Windows 2003 Server	
Web browser supported	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0	

#### Table 1-3System Requirements

# **Installation Procedures Guideline**

The flow of tasks you need to perform in order to configure the Cisco TelePresence network and install and configure the CTS-MAN are provided in the following table:

#### Table 1-4 Install and Configuration Procedures Guidelines for setting up CTS-MAN System

Set-Up and Installation Procedures Guidelines	Description	Location
Pre-Install Procedures	Provides Cisco TelePresence Manager with the contact and access information it requires to connect to and talk with your network.	Chapter 2, "Pre-Install System Set Up for Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Configure Microsoft Exchange for CTS-MAN	This chapter covers the steps needed to configure Microsoft Exchange and Active Directory for the CTS-MAN system.	Chapter 3, "Configuring Microsoft Exchange for Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Configure IBM Domino for CTS-MAN	This chapter covers the steps needed to configure IBM Domino and Domino server for the CTS-MAN system.	Chapter 4, "Configuring IBM Domino Server for Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Configuring Cisco Unified CM for CTS-MAN	Before installation, you must verify that Cisco Unified Communications Manager is configured for the CTS-MAN system.	Chapter 5, "Configuring Cisco Unified CM for Cisco TelePresence Manager"

Set-Up and Installation Procedures Guidelines	Description	Location
Install and Configure PreQualification Assistant	Install and configure the PreQualification Assistant to ensure that your pre-installation set up is performed correctly. The data you enter into the Tool Test Configuration forms are used to verify connections to the servers and retrieve data from them to be used to configure CTS manager	Chapter 6, "Installing and Configuring Cisco PreQualification Assistant"
Installing or Upgrading CTS-MAN software	Installing the CTS Manager software. In addition, the installation requires information about your network and the rules for finding and exchanging information.	Chapter 7, "Installing or Upgrading Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Initializing CTS-MAN	After installing the CTS-MAN software, the next process is initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager to enable access to information sources such as Microsoft Exchange Server for meeting requests from Microsoft Outlook, Active Directory for accessing user and conference room information, and Cisco Unified Communications Manager for conference room availability and telephone support	Chapter 8, "Initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Additional Installation Procedures for CTS-MAN	The administrator makes use of the configuration windows to perform system configuration tasks such as as synchronizing system databases, managing security, and reconfigure system settings	Chapter 9, "Additional Installation Configurations for Cisco TelePresence Manager"

Set-Up and Installation Procedures Guidelines	Description	Location
Monitoring CTS-MAN	Monitoring and updating meeting schedules and monitoring the status of rooms and system services	Chapter 10, "Monitoring Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Email notifications and En User Web UI	The Calendar service (either Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino) sends an acceptance email to the meeting organizer, with the notice that the rooms have been reserved and placed on the calendar. CTS-Manager also sends either a Confirmation email or an Action Required email to the meeting organizer when a meeting is scheduled	Chapter 11, "CTS-MAN Emails and End-User Web UI"





# Pre-Install System Set Up for Cisco TelePresence Manager

Revised: July 28, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

# Contents

- Introduction, page 2-1
- System Components and Versions, page 2-1
- Pre-Installation Procedure Guidelines for Initial Network Set-up, page 2-2

## Introduction

The Cisco TelePresence meeting solution combines audio, video, and interactive elements to create the feeling of being "in person" with participants in remote locations.

To enable these features, you must ensure the system components are meeting the system version requirements. These are covered in the next section.

# **System Components and Versions**

Before you proceed with CTS Manager installation, the servers and applications within your telecommunications network must be configured so that Cisco TelePresence Manager can find the resources and information needed to initialize the installation. These servers and applications may include one or more of the following:

- Your Cisco TelePresence System endpoints should be fully installed and configured before installing Cisco TelePresence Manager.
- Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Version 5.1 or 6.1.3) should already be installed and configured.
- Microsoft Exchange versions—The following versions are supported by Cisco TelePresence Manager 1.5
  - 2003 SP1 or 2003 SP2

- 2007 (Version: 08.00.0685.018) with or without SP1 NOTE: 2007 is supported only with WebDAV
- Active Directory 2003 (Version 5.2.3790.3959) on Microsoft Windows 2003 (64-bit and 32-bit editions)
- IBM Domino (Version 7.0, 8.0)
  - Domino Directory Version 7.0 or 8.0
- Scheduling Clients supported
  - Outlook Version 2003
  - Lotus Notes Version 6.5.x, Version 7.0.x, and Version 8.0
- MCS-7845-H2-CTS1 or MCS-7845-I2-CTS1 can be used as your Cisco Media Convergence Server.
- When you install Cisco TelePresence Manager, the Cisco Media Convergence Server hard drive is formatted, and any existing data on the drive is overwritten.
- This release of Cisco TelePresence Manager is designed to work with Microsoft Internet Explorer version 6.0 or later. Cisco cannot guarantee correct system behavior using unsupported browsers.
- Cisco recommends you configure the system using static IP addressing so it will be easy to manage.

# **Pre-Installation Procedure Guidelines for Initial Network Set-up**

This table provides a guideline for the procedures you will need to reference in order to pre-configure the network **before** installing the Cisco TelePresence Manager.

Note

The system will use either Microsoft or IBM not both. So only Chapter 3 or Chapter 4 needs to be referenced when doing the pre-configuration set-up.

Table 2-1 Pre-Configuration Guidelines for Setting Up Initial System Network for CTS-MAN

Set-Up Procedure Guidelines before Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location
Configure Microsoft Exchange	This chapter covers the steps needed to configure Microsoft Exchange and Active Directory for the CTS-MAN system.	Chapter 3, "Configuring Microsoft Exchange for Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Configure IBM Domino	This chapter covers the steps needed to configure IBM Domino and Domino server for the CTS-MAN system.	Chapter 4, "Configuring IBM Domino Server for Cisco TelePresence Manager"

Set-Up Procedure Guidelines before Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location
Configuring Cisco Unified CM	Before installation, you must verify that Cisco Unified Communications Manager is configured for the CTS-MAN system.	Chapter 5, "Configuring Cisco Unified CM for Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Install and run PreQualification Assistant	Install and run the PreQualification Assistant to ensure that your pre-installation set-up is configured correctly. The data you enter into the Tool Test Configuration forms are used to verify connections to the servers and get data from them to be used to configure CTS-MAN.	Chapter 6, "Installing and Configuring Cisco PreQualification Assistant"

If at any time you encounter problems, go to Chapter 13, Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager to see how to correct the problem.







# **Configuring Microsoft Exchange for Cisco TelePresence Manager**

Revised: July 28, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

# Contents

- Introduction, page 3-1
- Pre-Configuration Set-Up Guidelines, page 3-2
- Configuring Microsoft Exchange for CTS-Manager, page 3-2
- Deploying with Microsoft Exchange 2003, page 3-3
- Migrating from Exchange 2003 to Exchange 2007, page 3-7

# Introduction

This document explains how to set up the Microsoft Outlook messaging software to be able to receive reminders and allow users to connect to a remote meeting site with the touch of a button.

To enable these features, you must provide Cisco TelePresence Manager with the contact and access information it requires to connect to and talk with your network.

This chapter covers the steps needed to configure either Microsoft Exchange 2003 or 2007 and Active Directory.

- Microsoft Exchange versions—The following versions are supported by Cisco TelePresence Manager 1.5
  - 2003 SP1 or 2003 SP2
  - 2007 (Version: 08.00.0685.018) with or without SP1.



2007 is supported only with WebDAV.

- Active Directory 2003 (Version 5.2.3790.3959) on Microsoft Windows 2003 (64-bit and 32-bit editions)
- Scheduling Clients supported

- Outlook Versions 2003, 2007
- This release of Cisco TelePresence Manager is designed to work with Microsoft Internet Explorer version 6.0 or later. Cisco cannot guarantee correct system behavior using unsupported browsers.
- Cisco recommends you configure the system using static IP addressing so it will be easy to manage.

# **Pre-Configuration Set-Up Guidelines**

The purpose of this section is to reference the chapters you will next need in order to pre-configure supporting software before installing the Cisco TelePresence Manager.

The flow of tasks you need to do for additional configurations before installing the CTS-MAN are provided in the following table.

Set-Up Procedures before Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location
Configure Microsoft Exchange	This chapter covers the steps needed to configure Microsoft Exchange and Active Directory for the CTS-MAN system.	Current Chapter.
Next Steps After Microsoft Exchange Set-up		
Configuring Cisco Unified CM.	Before installation, you must verify that Cisco Unified Communications Manager is configured for the CTS-MAN system.	Chapter 5, "Configuring Cisco Unified CM for Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Install and Configure PreQualification Assistant	Install and run the Pre-qualification Assistant to ensure that your pre-installation set up is performed correctly. The data you enter into the Tool Test Configuration forms are used to verify connections to the servers and get data from them in order to configure CTS Manager	Chapter 6, "Installing and Configuring Cisco PreQualification Assistant"

#### Table 3-1 Pre-Configure Guidelines Before Installing CTS-MAN

# **Configuring Microsoft Exchange for CTS-Manager**

 If you are using secure mode, a certificate request must exist. If a certificate was not requested when Microsoft Exchange was installed, you can follow the procedure described in the tutorial found at the following Microsoft Exchange URL: http://www.msexchange.org/tutorials/Securing-Exchange-Server-2003
 -Outlook-Web-Access-Chapter5.html

- See the sections "Installing the Microsoft Certificate Service" and "Creating the Certificate Request."
- Make a copy of the certificate and place it in a folder accessible to the computer with browser access to the Cisco TelePresence Manager server.
- A copy of the certificate for Active Directory exists. To request a certificate for Active Directory, follow the below steps:
  - 1. By default, the certificate file is named \_.crt. An enterprise certificate authority (CA) automatically publishes the root certificates, and enterprise domain controllers automatically enroll for all domain controller certificates.
  - 2. Make sure the certificate, the CA, and the CA web interface are all installed on the same server. Using Internet Explorer, connect to *https://<CA server>/certsrv*.
  - **3.** Authenticate as the administrator, making sure you specify the proper domain, for example, demotest\administrator.
  - 4. Choose **Download CA Certificate**, using Distinguished Encoding Rules as the encoding method.

# **Deploying with Microsoft Exchange 2003**

- **Step 1** Create an account in Microsoft Exchange 2003 for CTS-Manager, e.g. ctmmanaccount.
- Step 2 Provide an adequate mailbox quota for the ctmmanaccount. Cisco recommends providing at least 1 GB of mailbox quota for a deployment of up to 125 Cisco TelePresence System endpoints. Additional mailbox quota is recommended if feasible.
- **Step 3** Log into the ctmmanaccount once to verify it is set up correctly.
- **Step 4** Create an account in Microsoft Exchange for each Cisco TelePresence System endpoint. You can use 'Active Directory Users and Computers' to create the room accounts, or use any custom script to create the room account. If the room is already created, use the information from the Cisco Unified CM and skip this step.

Caution	In Microsoft Exchange software, some special characters are not supported in Recipient Policy Exchange server name, mailbox name, etc. These special characters will also not be supported by		
	CTS-MAN.		
	Refer to the Microsoft KB for specific information on characters:		
	http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;EN-US;841091		
	Exchange 2007 Information		
	http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd285491.aspx		
Step 5	Log into the room account once using Outlook Web Access (OWA), or Outlook. This must be done or the room mailbox may not be set up properly in Exchange.		
Step 6	The Cisco TelePresence Manager account (e.g. ctmmanaccount) must have read permission on the Calendar folder for each room's mailbox. You can use Outlook to set Calendar Properties (the Permissions tab), or use Active Directory ("Full mailbox access" permissions).		
Step 7	Verify the Cisco TelePresence Manager account has permissions for all room accounts.		
	a Use a supported browser and log onto the room account with OWA (http:// <exchange in<="" td=""></exchange>		

**a.** Use a supported browser and log onto the room account with OWA (http://<exchange ip address>/exchange/<roomaccountname>)

- **b.** Log in using the Cisco TelePresence Manager account (e.g. ctmmanaccount)
- **c.** Validate the setup by sending a test email to any user in the same domain. Validate the user receives the email.

## **Deploying with Microsoft Exchange 2007**

Microsoft Exchange management tools can be found in the start menu in the Exchange server - "Start > All Programs > Microsoft Exchange Server 2007". There are 2 tools available as options:

- Exchange Management Console GUI version which has online help.
- Exchange Management Shell shell version that can be useful for scripting.

Caution

In Microsoft Exchange software, some special characters are not supported in Recipient Policy Exchange server name, mailbox name, etc. These special characters will also not be supported by CTS-MAN. Exchange 2007 Information:

Exchange 2007 Information:

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd285491.aspxhttp://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd 285491.aspx

**Step 1** Create a user account in Exchange for CTS-Manager (e.g. ctsmanaccount).

.The user account is created from "Exchange Management Console" using the User Mailbox by doing the following:

- a. Select Recipient Configuration > Mailbox, right-click and select "New Mailbox"
- **b.** Select "User Mailbox" type and follow the dialog to create the mailbox.
- Step 2 Provide an adequate mailbox quota for the ctmmanaccount. Cisco recommends providing at least 1 GB of mailbox quota for a deployment of up to 125 Cisco TelePresence System endpoints. Additional mailbox quota is recommended if feasible.
- **Step 3** Log into the CTS-Manager mailbox once to verify the user mailbox is set up correctly.
- Step 4 IF a new room needs to be added, Admin needs to create the room in Calendaring server first with appropriate permissions for CTS Manager application account and then create associated device(s) in CUCM. If admin ends up creating room in CUCM beforehand, then the room would appear in error in CTS Manager. Once room is configured in Calendaring server, admin can resync the room in CTS Manager and at that point error goes away.
- **Step 5** Create an account in Exchange for each Cisco TelePresence System endpoint. Use one of the following methods:
  - a. In "Exchange Management Console" (EMC), select "Recipient Configuration > Mailbox", right-click and select "New Mailbox." Select "Room Mailbox" type and follow the dialogs to create the mailbox.
  - b. Run "Exchange Management Shell" (EMS) cmdlet to create a Room mailbox / account.

- **Step 6** The CTS-Manager account needs to have full access on the Calendar folder of each room mailbox, or at minimum it needs to have read permission. Using EMS, run one of the 2 cmdlets in the following based on your preference:
  - **a.** Add-mailboxpermission -identity "TelepresenceRoom9" -accessRights FullAccess -user ctmperf\ctsmanaccount
  - **b.** Add-mailboxpermission -identity "TelepresenceRoom9" -accessRights ReadPermission -user ctmperf\ctsmanaccount

You can check the current permission setting of a Room by running one of the following cmdlets:

- Get-mailbox -server tsbu-ctmpc19 | get-mailboxpermission
- Get-mailboxpermission identity TelepresenceRoom9
- **Step 7** Set the "DeleteSubject" and "AddOrganizerToSubject" properties in room mailbox calendar to **False**. This sets the parameters for the meeting to be displayed on the IP Phone.
  - a. Set-MailboxCalendarSettings -Identity TelepresenceRoom9 -DeleteSubject \$false
  - b. Set-MailboxCalendarSettings -Identity TelepresenceRoom9 -AddOrganizerToSubject \$false
- **Step 8** It is recommended to set Auto-accept to ON using EMS.
  - **Note** This works only with room mailbox, not with user mailbox. Also CTS-MAN will not process meetings that are tentative. Meetings that are accepted if Microsoft AAA Agent is off will only access proxy if accepted.

Set-MailboxCalendarSettings -Identity TelepresenceRoom9 -AutomateProcessing AutoAccept

c. Check if Auto-accept has been configured for the room.

Get-MailboxCalendarSettings -Identity TelepresenceRoom9 | fl

- Step 9 Log into room mailbox once using Outlook Web Access (OWA) or Outlook 2007. This is an important step, as room mailbox will not be setup appropriately in MS Exchange. In Exchange 2007, you won't be able to directly log on to the room\* mailbox using the room username, because the user account of the room mailbox is disabled by default. There are 2 possible scenarios (based on the decision made in step 5):
  - **Note** \*Only when mailbox is created as "Room Mailbox" type. If mailbox is created as "User Mailbox" type, then it would be the same step as it is with Exchange 2003 to log on to the mailbox.
  - **a.** The CTS-Manager user (e.g. ctsmanaccount) has been given full access to the room mailboxes. In this case, use ctsmanaccount credential to log on to each room mailbox.
    - First log into ctsmanaccount mailbox using OWA, using a supported web browser (IE 6.x) and typing: http://<exchange ip address>/owa/. Once logged on as ctsmanaccount user, click on the "ctsmanaccount" tab on the top, enter the room account name, and click "Open". It would open the room mailbox in another window.
    - Alternatively, you can log on to room account using either Outlook 2007 or Outlook Web Access: http://<exchange ip address>/owa/<room name@domain name>. Again, here you will need to

http://<exchange ip address>/owa/<room\_name@domain\_name>. Again, here you will need to log on using ctsmanaccount credential.

- b. The second scenario is where the ctsmanaccount was only given read permission to the room mailboxes. In such case, you need to have a third user account which has "full access" to the room mailboxes, let's say this user is "Joe Smith." Use Joe Smith credential to log on to his mailbox using Outlook 2007, then follow the below steps:
  - i. Once logged on, click on the **Calendar** on the left pane.

- ii Click **Open a Shared Calendar** ... and enter the room name.
- iii The room calendar would show up under **People's Calendar** on the left pane. In the screen-shot, the room is TelepresenceRoom10. Right-click on the room name, and select **Properties**.
- iv. Click Permissions tab
- v. Click on Add and select *ctsmanaccount* account name.
- vi. In "Permissions" > "Permission Level" drop-down field, select Reviewer.
- vii.In "Permissions" > "Read" section, check Full Details.
- viii. Click OK.
- ix. Repeat step ii to viii for each Room that will be managed by CTS-Manager.
- **Step 10** Form-based authentication (FBA) is enabled by default in Exchange 2007. In order for Cisco TelePresence Manager to work, disable FBA.
  - a. Go to EMC > Server Configuration > Client Access > Outlook Web Access > Exchange (Default Web Site) > Properties > Authentication tab
  - b. Select "Use one or more standard authentication method."
  - **c.** Check "Integrated Windows Authentication" and/or "Basic Authentication (password is sent in clear text)" boxes.
  - d. Click OK on the warning dialog box that says IIS restart is required.
  - e. Run "iisreset /noforce" from a command prompt, or go to "Services Manager" and restart "IIS Admin service."
- Step 11 Open IIS Manager and enable WebDAV.
  - **a**. Go to "Internet Information Services" > [server\_name] > "Web Service Extension"
  - **b.** Select "WebDAV" and click the "Allow" button, if it is showing "Prohibited" in Status.
  - **a.** Click the "Allow" button, if it is showing "Prohibited" in Status.
- **Step 12** Verify that the Web Sites Authentication Method is configured correctly for "Exchange" web site. Repeat these steps for the "Default Web Site" setting:
  - a. In "IIS Manager," go to "Internet Information Services" > [*server\_name*] > "Web Sites" > "*Exchange*"
  - **b.** Right-click on the *Exchange* and select **Properties**.
  - c. Go to "Directory Security" tab
  - d. In "Authentication and access control" section:
    - Click the Edit button
    - Check the desired authentication access method "Integrated Windows Authentication" and/or "Basic Authentication (password is sent in clear text)" boxes.
    - Click OK
  - **e.** This step is required **only if** you need to configure CTS- Manager with the non-secure binding to the Exchange server. In "Secure communications" section:
    - Click the Edit button
    - Uncheck the "Require secure channel (SSL)" box, and click OK.
  - f. Click **OK** on all the dialog boxes that follow.

**Step 13** Synchronize the system clock in the Exchange server to the same NTP server used by CTS Manager.

## Migrating from Exchange 2003 to Exchange 2007

In Exchange 2003, there is no distinction between "User Mailbox" and "Room Mailbox" types. All mailboxes are created as "User Mailbox" in Exchange 2003. When you migrate the TelePresence room mailbox accounts from Exchange 2003 to Exchange 2007, you need to convert them into "Room Mailbox" type, especially if they are to be configured with Auto-Accept enabled.

Use the following procedure to migrate from Exchange 2003 to Exchange 2007:

- **Step 1** Install and configure the Exchange 2007 server.
- **Step 2** Migrate the CTS-Manager User mailbox to the Exchange 2007 server.
- **Step 3** Point CTS-Manager to the Exchange 2007 server.

Once step 1-3 are complete, the system will reboot.

**Step 4** After the system has completed rebooting, shut down the CTS-Manager server.

This is important so that users may not use the system during migration.

Step 5 Migrate all Cisco TelePresence endpoints to the Exchange 2007 server.
 Verify that all Cisco TelePresence endpoints are of type RoomMailbox, otherwise AutoAccept cannot be enabled.

After the migration is completed, add full access permission for the delegates to any proxy.







# **Configuring IBM Domino Server for Cisco TelePresence Manager**

Revised: July 28, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

# Contents

- Introduction, page 4-1
- Important Considerations, page 4-1
- Pre-Configuration Procedure Guidelines for IBM Domino Set-up, page 4-2
- Configuring IBM Domino for CTS-Manager, page 4-2
- Directory Assistance in a Domino Deployment, page 4-3

# Introduction

This document covers the steps needed to configure IBM Domino and Domino Directory Server for the Cisco TelePresence Manager.

# **Important Considerations**

Before you proceed with CTS Manager installation, the servers and applications within your telecommunications network must be configured so that Cisco TelePresence Manager can find the resources and information needed to initialize the installation. These servers and applications for the IBM include the following:

These servers and applications may include one or more of the following:

- Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Version 6.1.3 or better) should already be installed and configured.
- IBM Domino (Version 7.0, 8.0)
  - Domino Directory Version 7.0 or 8.0
- Scheduling Clients supported

- Lotus Notes Version 6.5.x, Version 7.0.x, and Version 8.0
- This release of Cisco TelePresence Manager is designed to work with Microsoft Internet Explorer version 6.0 or later. Cisco cannot guarantee correct system behavior using unsupported browsers.

# **Pre-Configuration Procedure Guidelines for IBM Domino Set-up**

The purpose of this guide is to outline the chapters you will need to reference in order to pre-configure the IBM Domino before installing the CTS Manager.

Table 4-1 Pre-Configuration Guide for IBM Domino before Setting Up CTS-MAN

Set-Up Guidelines before Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location
Configuring IBM Domino	This chapter covers the steps needed to configure IBM Domino and Domino server for the CTS-MAN system.	Current Chapter
Next Steps After IBM Domino configuration		
Configuring Cisco Unified CM.	Before installation, you must verify that Cisco Unified Communications Manager is configured for the CTS-MAN system.	Chapter 5, "Configuring Cisco Unified CM for Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Install and Configure PreQualification Assistant Tool	Install and configure the Pre-qualification Assistant to ensure that your pre-installation set up is configured correctly. The data you enter into the Tool Test Configuration forms are used to verify connections to the servers and get data from them to be used to configure CTS-MAN.	Chapter 6, "Installing and Configuring Cisco PreQualification Assistant"

The procedures in the next section must be completed before installing and initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager.

If at any time you encounter problems, go to Chapter 13, "Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager" to see how to correct the problem.

### Configuring IBM Domino for CTS-Manager

Step 1 Create an account in IBM Domino for CTS- Manager (e.g. ctm account).
#### Use information on

<u>http://www-12.lotus.com/ldd/doc/domino\_notes/7.0/help7\_admin.nsf/Main?OpenFrameSet</u> to create user account. Refer to 'Setting up Notes users' section for specific details.

- **Note** Internet password for this account MUST be set.
- **Step 2** Provide an adequate mailbox quota for the CTS-Manager account.
  - **Note** Cisco System recommends setting up a CTS-Manager account with at least 1 GB of mailbox quota for a deployment of up to 50 rooms. Additional mailbox quota allocated to this user is recommended if feasible.
- **Step 3** Log into the CTS-Manager account once to verify it is setup correctly.

The CTS-Manager account needs to have read permission for each resource reservation database which contains any Cisco TelePresence room. Select the specific resource reservation database and right click to select *Database>Access Control*. Choose the account as specified below and set permissions per the instructions.

The CTS-Manager account also needs to have editor permissions to its own mailbox. This is required to allow storing copies of emails sent out in "Sent Items" folder.

- **Step 4** Create a room resource in IBM Domino for each TelePresence room. The steps might involve creating a new resource reservation database, creating a new site profile document and adding Cisco TelePresence rooms for Domino.
  - **Note** You can create a room resource only using an administrative privilege account.
- **Step 5** CTS-Manager uses Java Notes API to retrieve schedule information. Make sure the following server tasks are running on the Domino server.
  - DIIOP Server
  - HTTP Server
  - LDAP Server

### **Directory Assistance in a Domino Deployment**

Directory Assistance provides seamless authentication and authorization of Domino users existing outside the Domino directory. In order to support external LDAP users logging into CTS-Manager as a Concierge, your Domino Administrator must configure Directory Assistance to authenticate users in the external directory. In addition, users, with login privileges, must have their member groups assigned to the CTS-Manager Access Management roles.

Please refer to your Domino Administration documentation on how to configure Directory Assistance to use an external LDAP directory.

In order to verify that DA is configured correctly, perform an ldap search pointing to the Domino LDAP directory using the search filter and based dn of the external directory. This should return the user details in the external directory.

In addition, if the external directory also has a mail server setup (e.g. Exchange), DA will resolve the email ids of the external users. To verify this, login to the Domino client as a Domino user and try scheduling a meeting with the external user as the invitee. External users should be found in the meeting scheduling view.







# **Configuring Cisco Unified CM for Cisco TelePresence Manager**

Revised: July 28, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

# Contents

- Introduction, page 5-1
- Important Considerations, page 5-1
- Configuring Cisco Unified CM for CTS-Manager, page 5-2
- For Deployments Using Microsoft Exchange 2003, 2007, and IBM Domino, page 5-3
- Logging into the Cisco Unified CM Administrator, page 5-5
- Configuring the Options File, page 5-5
- Adding a Cisco TelePresence Device, page 5-6
- Creating and Configuring a Cisco TelePresence Device, page 5-7
- , page 5-9

# Introduction

This section describes adding parameters to Cisco Unified Communications Manager and researching information from the current installation of Cisco Unified Communications Manager that will be used to initialize the Cisco TelePresence Manager installation. For more information refer to *Cisco Unified Communications Manager Configuration Guide for Cisco TelePresence System*.

# **Important Considerations**

Before you proceed with CTS Manager installation, the servers and applications within your network must be configured so that Cisco TelePresence Manager can find the resources and information needed to initialize the installation. This section cover the following applications:

• Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Version 6.1.3 or later) should already be installed and configured. For more information refer to section *Logging into the Cisco Unified CM Administrator, page 5-5* or refer to the *Cisco Unified Communications Manager Configuration Guide for Cisco TelePresence System.* 



If you see the test connection failure message, you may need to specify IP addresses for your Cisco Unified Communications Manager server(s) if this is a non-DNS environment, as well as other network devices. You can change any server name values in Cisco Unified Communications Manager. Cisco recommends you configure the system using static IP addressing so it will be easy to manage

# **Pre-Configuration Procedure Guidelines for Cisco Unified CM Set-up**

This table provides a guideline for the procedures you will need to reference in order to pre-configure the Cisco Unified Communications Manager **before** installing the Cisco TelePresence Manager.



The system uses either Microsoft or IBM not both. So either Chapter 3 or Chapter 4 needs to be referenced when doing the pre-configuration.

Set-Up Procedure Guidelines before Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location
Configuring Cisco Unified CM	Before CTS-MAN installation, you must verify that Cisco Unified Communications Manager is configured for the CTS-MAN system.	Current Chapter
Install and Configuring Pre-Qualification Assistant	Install and run the Pre-qualification Assistant to ensure that your pre-installation set-up is configured correctly. The data you enter into the Tool Test Configuration forms are used to verify connections to the servers and retrieve data from them to be used to configure CTS manager	Chapter 6, "Installing and Configuring Cisco PreQualification Assistant"

#### Table 5-1 Pre-Configuration Guideline for Setting Up CUCM for CTS-MAN

# **Configuring Cisco Unified CM for CTS-Manager**

The procedures in the next section must be completed before installing and initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager.

If at any time you encounter problems, go to Chapter 13, "Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager" to see how to correct the problem.

# For Deployments Using Microsoft Exchange 2003, 2007, and IBM Domino

- A Cisco Unified Communications Manager certificate must be accessible for CTS-Manager to communicate with Unified CM.
  - A Cisco Unified Communications Manager certificate is available from Internet Explorer, with the file extension .der. This certificate was generated when you first installed Cisco Unified Communications Manager.
  - Make a copy of the certificate and place it in a folder that is accessible to the computer that has browser access to the Cisco TelePresence Manager server.
- Step 1 Create an application user for CTS-Manager. Refer to section Logging into the Cisco Unified CM Administrator, page 5-5 or to your Cisco Unified Communications Manager Configuration Guide for Cisco TelePresence System for the steps to perform this. Save these credentials for the CTS-Manager initialization procedure that follows.

Assign all TelePresence units/IP phone devices to this user profile. MAC Address of each unit and shared phone should be added to the user profile. Add TelePresence endpoints and IP phone devices in the Cisco Unified CM Admin UI, by going to "Device > Phone."

- **Step 2** For each TelePresence endpoint device, follow these steps:
  - **a.** a.At the bottom of the "Device Information" section, check "**Allow Control of Device from CTI**" box.
  - **b.** b.In the "Product Specific Configuration Layout" section, enter the room email id in the "**Room** Name" field.
  - c. a.Assign the same DN as the IP phone that is associated to this TelePresence endpoint device.
  - d. In the "Directory Number Information" section of "Directory Number Configuration," check "Allow Control of Device from CTI" box .
- **Step 3** For each IP phone device that is associated to TelePresence endpoint device, check "Allow Control of Device from CTI" box at the bottom of the "Device Information" section.
- Step 4 Go to "User Management > Application User," and create an application user in Cisco Unified CM for Cisco TelePresence Manager. Save these credentials for use during Cisco TelePresence Manager first time setup.
- **Step 5** Assign all TelePresence endpoints and their associated IP phone devices to this application user. MAC Address of each unit and IP phone should be added to the user profile.
- **Step 6** Create user group in the CiscoUnified CM for Cisco Telepresence Manager.
  - **a**. Assign following roles to this user group:
    - Standard AXL API access
    - Standard CTI enabled
    - Standard serviceability
    - Standard CiscoUnified CM administrative users

- **b.** Add the above application user to the newly created user group.
- Step 7 Verify all required services are activated and running on the Cisco Unified CM node. It is required to have "Cisco AXL Web Service" activated on the Cisco Unified CM Publisher node. Similarly, "Cisco RIS Data Collector" should be running on Cisco Unified CM Publisher node. "Cisco CTIManager" should be activated and running, but could be running on any node inside the same Cisco Unified CM Cluster. Please refer to the Cisco Unified CM Configuration Guide for details on service activation and start/stop.
- **Step 8** Download the certificate for Cisco Unified CM using IE Browser. User is prompted with a certificate when browser is pointed to Cisco Unified CM server. You can save cert file on local machine. This would be used later while configuring the CTS Manager during first time setup.

**Note** If a room's display name is changed once CTS-Manager is up and running, CTS Manager reads new display name once every 24 hours, so the new name will display after this 24 hour period. In addition, when a new room is added to CUCM, a restart on CTS Manager is also not required.

### **Configuring Cisco Unified CM Server Names**

- Step 1 Log into Cisco Unified Communications Manager as an Administrator.
- **Step 2** Choose the **Server** option from the **System** menu.
- **Step 3** Click **Find** to discover all the servers in your Cisco Unified Communications Manager cluster.
- Step 4 In the Cisco TelePresence Manager's System Configuration -> Cisco UCM Host field, use only IP address in a non-DNS environment. If DNS is configured and accessible, use either hostname or IP address.

# Logging into the Cisco Unified CM Administrator

To log into the Cisco Unified CM Administration application, follow these steps:

-	The Cisco Unified CM Administration program operates on the Microsoft Internet Explorer version 6 o
	a later version web browser.
	Access a web server that is supported by the Cisco Unified CM Administration application from any use PC in your network.
]	In the address bar of the web browser, enter the following URL:
ht	https://CCM-server-name
	Where <i>CCM-server-name</i> is the name or IP address of the server.
l	You may need to specify the address of the server where Cisco Unified CM is installed. If your network uses DNS services, you can specify the hostname of the server. If your network does not use DNS services, you must specify the IP address of the server.
]	Log in with your assigned administrative privileges.
	Select <b>Cisco Unified Communications Manager Administration</b> in the Navigation field at the upper right corner of the page and click <b>Go</b> to return to the Cisco Unified CM Administration home page.

# **Configuring the Options File**

Cisco Unified CM is customized with an options file to configure support for the CTS.

To configure the options file, follow these steps:

Step 1	Log in to the Cisco Unified CM Administration application. See the "Logging into the Cisco Unified CM Administrator" section on page 5-5.		
Note	You must be running Cisco Unified CM version 6.1.3, or a later release.		
Step 2	Add the Cisco TelePresence device pack to Cisco Unified CM. The device pack adds functionality to Cisco Unified Communications Manager so that you can create a Cisco TelePresence device. See the "Adding a Cisco TelePresence Device" section on page 5-6.		
Step 3	Create a Cisco TelePresence device to register the Cisco TelePresence device as a Cisco Unified IP Phone. See the "Creating and Configuring a Cisco TelePresence Device" section on page 5-7.		
Step 4	Assign a directory number to the Cisco TelePresence device. See the "Adding a Cisco TelePresence Device" section on page 5-6.		
Step 5	Create a Cisco Unified IP Phone 7975 device type.		



Auto registration cannot be used to create the device type.

# Adding a Cisco TelePresence Device

Us the information in the following sections to add a CTS device:

- Download Device Packs, page 5-6
- Install the Device, page 5-6

### **Download Device Packs**

If the Cisco TelePresence device is not listed on the Cisco Unified Communications Manager phone list, you must add the device. The Cisco TelePresence device is included in the latest device packs for Cisco Unified CM.

To download device packs, follow these steps:

 Step 1
 Go to the following path on Cisco.com:

 Support > Voice and Unified Communications > Call Control > Download Software

 Step 2
 Enter your Cisco username and password and select your release.

 Table 5-2 contains available software device packs:

#### Table 5-2

Cisco Unified CM Version	Device Package	Release Date
7.0	cmterm-devicepack7.0.2.21009-1.cop.sgn	May 15, 2009
6.1	cmterm-devicepack6.1.3.3102-1.cop.sgn	April 28, 2009
6.0	cmterm-devicepack6.0.1.3121-1.cop.sgn	May 15, 2009

### **Install the Device**

To install the device, follow these steps:

Step 1Log in to the Cisco Unified CM Administration application.Step 2At the Cisco IPT Platform Administration window, choose Software Installation/Upgrade.NoteFor an explanation of how to access the Cisco IPT Platform Administration window, see the

For an explanation of how to access the Cisco IPT Platform Administration window, see the *Cisco IP Telephony Platform Administration Guide for Cisco Unified Mobility Manager, Release 1.2.* 

- **Step 3** From the **Source** drop-down list, choose the source for the device pack.
- Step 4 Click Next. The Options/Upgrades window appears.
- **Step 5** Choose the appropriate file from the drop-down list and click **Next**. The system compiles a checksum value.
- **Step 6** Click **Save** to accept the checksum value and start installation.

The installation process can take several minutes. An on-screen log reports status of the installation. Once the device pack is installed, you can begin configuring the Cisco TelePresence device.

# **Creating and Configuring a Cisco TelePresence Device**

The following sections describe how to create and configure a Cisco TelePresence device so you can register it as a Cisco Unified IP phone:

- Adding a New Phone as a Cisco TelePresence Device, page 5-7
- Finding a Phone, page 5-7
- Configuring Cisco TelePresence Devices, page 5-8

### Adding a New Phone as a Cisco TelePresence Device

Note

Before you begin this procedure, note the MAC address of the Cisco TelePresence device.

To add a new phone as a Cisco TelePresence device, follow these steps from the Cisco Unified Communications Manager Administration menu bar:

- **Step 1** Log in to the Cisco Unified CM Administration application.
- **Step 2** From the Device drop-down menu, select **Phone**. The Find and List Phones Page appears.
- **Step 3** Click the **Add New** button at the bottom of the window. The Add a New Phone window appears.
- **Step 4** In the Add a New Phone window, click the **Phone Type** drop-down list and choose **Cisco TelePresence**.
- **Step 5** Click **Next** to display the Phone Configuration window.
- **Step 6** Proceed to Configuring Cisco TelePresence Devices.

### **Finding a Phone**

To find a phone, follow these steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the Cisco Unified CM Administration application.
- **Step 2** From the Device drop-down menu, select **Phone**. The Find and List Phones Page appears containing a list of configured phones.

- Step 3 If a list of configured phones is not displayed, click the plus sign (+) under Find and List Phones.To find all phones that are registered in the database, follow these steps:
  - a. Choose Device Name from the list of fields.
  - b. Choose "is not empty" from the list of patterns.
  - c. Click Find.
  - Or
  - d. Choose the appropriate search pattern for your text search (for example, "Begins with").
  - e. Enter your search text in the Find field.

# **Configuring Cisco TelePresence Devices**



You must restart your system after you have completed the configuration tasks in this section.

This section describes how to configure Cisco TelePresence devices and associated parameters.

To configure the Cisco TelePresence device, perform the tasks in this section. When you are finished configuring your settings, click **Save** and follow the prompts to restart the system.

### **Before You Begin**

Verify that the Phone Type and Device Protocol lists contain the following information:

- Phone Type—Cisco 7970 or Cisco 7975
- Device Protocol—SIP

:

### **Device Information**

To configure device information, follow these steps:

<b>Step 1</b> Enter device information using the information in Table 5-3 as a guide.
---

Field	<b>Required</b> ?	Setting
MAC Address	Yes	MAC address for the Cisco TelePresence primary codec.
Description	_	Short description of the device.
Device Pool	Yes	Any
Common Device Configuration		Leave field as< None>.
Phone Button Template	Yes	Standard_Cisco_TelePresence

Table 5-3 Cisco TelePresence Device Information

Field	<b>Required</b> ?	Setting
Common Phone Profile	Yes	Standard Common Phone Profile
Calling Search Space	—	Leave field as <any>.</any>
Media Resource Group List	—	Leave field as <none>.</none>
Location	Yes	Hub_None
User Locale	—	Leave field as <none>.</none>
Network Locale	—	Leave field as <none>.</none>
Owner User ID	—	Leave field as <none>.</none>
Phone Load Name	—	Specify required version of Cisco TelePresence System if no device default is set.
Use Trusted Relay Point	—	Chose from the following:
		• Default
		• On
		• Off
Calling Party Transformation CSS	_	Leave field as <none>.</none>

#### Table 5-3 Cisco TelePresence Device Information (continued)

- **Step 2** Make sure that the following check boxes at the bottom of the Device Information section are marked as indicated:
  - Use Device Pool Calling Party Transformation CSS—Checked
  - Is Active—Checked
  - Retry Video Call as Audio—Checked
  - Ignore Presentation Indicators—Unchecked
  - Allow Control of Device from CTI—Checked
  - Logged Into Hunt Group—Checked
  - **Remote Device**—Unchecked
- **Step 3** Click **Save** to save your settings.









# Installing and Configuring Cisco PreQualification Assistant

Revised: July 28, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

# **Contents**

- Introduction, page 6-1
- Pre-Configuration Procedure Guidelines for Checking Initial Network Set-up, page 6-2
- Installing the PreQualification Assistant Tool, page 6-3
- Running the Tool Using the Tool Application Window, page 6-6
- Menu Commands, page 6-7
- File Menu Commands, page 6-7
- System Menu Command, page 6-7
- Test Configuration Forms Window, page 6-8
- Using Test Configuration Forms, page 6-10
- Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange) Test Configuration Form, page 6-15
- Test Configuration Forms in an IBM Domino Environment, page 6-17
- Calendar Server (IBM Domino) Test Configuration Form, page 6-19

# Introduction

This document explains how to install and configure the Cisco TelePresence Manager PreQualification Assistant tool.

It is important to install and run the PreQualification Assistant to ensure that the pre-configuration set-up is performed correctly. The data you enter into the Tool Test Configuration forms are used to verify connections to the servers and validate data from them to be used to configure CTS Manager.

# **Pre-Configuration Procedure Guidelines for Checking Initial Network Set-up**

This table provides a guideline for the procedures you will need to reference in order to check the set-up of the the network **before** installing the Cisco TelePresence Manager.

This table also lists the next couple to tasks to be performed when installing the CTS-MAN system.

#### Table 6-1 Pre-Configuration Guideline for Testing the Set-Up of the System Network for CTS-MAN

Set-Up Procedure Guidelines before Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location
Install and configure PreQualification Assistant	Install, configure, and run the PreQualification Assistant to ensure that your pre-configuration set-up is performed correctly. The data you enter into the Tool Test Configuration forms are used to verify connections to the servers and get data from them to be used to configure CTS Manager	Current Chapter.
Installing or Upgrading CTS-MAN software	The installation requires information about your network and the rules for finding and exchanging information. This information was set up during the pre-configuration tasks.	Chapter 7, "Installing or Upgrading Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Initializing CTS-MAN	After installing the CTS-MAN software, the next process is initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager to enable access to information sources such as Microsoft Exchange Server for meeting requests from Microsoft Outlook, Active Directory for accessing user and conference room information, and Cisco Unified Communications Manager for conference room availability and telephone support	Chapter 8, "Initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager"

# Installing the PreQualification Assistant Tool

After you have downloaded the PreQualification executable, use the following procedures to install the tool.

**Step 1** Double-click the executable to begin the install process. After the Installer window appears, click the **Next** button.



Figure 6-1 Excelsior Installer Window

Step 2 Specify if the application is to be a personal profile or can be used by others. Then click the Next button.



Figure 6-2 Installation Type Window

Step 3 Review and accept the destination folder defaults and click the Next button.

🜃 CTS-Manager PreQualification Assistant 1.5 - Excelsior Insta	iller 💶 🗙
Destination folder	
Select destination folder	
The installer will install CTS-Manager PreQualification Assistant 1.5 componer following folder.	nts to the
To install to this folder, click Next.	
To install to a different folder, click Browse and choose another folder.	
Destination folder	Browse
C:\Program Files\Cisco Systems\CTS-Man PreQual Assistant 1.5	Browse
Space required on C:	152792 K
Space available on C:	13166856 K
< <u>B</u> ack	Cancel

#### Figure 6-3 Destination Folder Window

**Step 4** Review the program folder destination, accept the defaults and click the **Next** button.



🜃 CTS-Manager PreQualification Assistant 1.5 - Excelsior Installer	- DX
Program folder	
Select program folder	
The installer will add program icons to the program folder listed below. You may ty folder name or select one from the list of existing folders. To continue, click Next.	pe a new
Cisco Systems\CTS-Man PreQual Assistant 1.5	
Accessories Administrative Tools Adobe Cisco IPTV Viewer Cisco Security Agent Cisco Systems VPN Client EMC Retrospect Games iPass	
< Back Next >	Cancel

Step 5 In the Start Installation window, review the folder information and if correct, click the Next button.

📅 CTS-Manager PreQualification Assistant 1.5 - Excelsior Installer	
Start installation	
View current settings	
The installer is ready to install CTS-Manager PreQualification Assistant 1.5 on your Click Next to begin the installation or Back to change the current settings listed belo Current settings:	
Destination folder C:\Program Files\Cisco Systems\CTS-Man PreQual Assistant 1.5 Program folder Cisco Systems\CTS-Man PreQual Assistant 1.5	
	~
< <u>Back</u>	Cancel

#### Figure 6-5 Start Installation Window

Step 6

If you are ready to finalize the installation, click Finish button.

Note	

Uncheck the **Start** checkbox if you don't want to launch the tool immediately after completing the installation.

Figure 6-6 Installation Completed Window



### **Running the Tool - Using the Tool Application Window**

The CTS-Manager PreQualification tool allows administrators to determine if any changes are needed to their network to support a CTS-Manager installation

Figure 6-7 Tool Application Window

File System Help     LDAP Server (Active Directory) Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange) Unified CM     Host Host   Bind Mode: Normal <ul> <li>Secure</li> </ul> Port: <ul> <li>B443</li> <li>Username:</li> <li>Password:</li> <li>Certificate:</li> <li>Browse</li> </ul> Browse <ul> <li>Execute Tests</li> </ul>	
Host Configuration   Host:   Bind Mode:   Port:   8443   Username:   Password:   Certificate:	
Host Configuration   Host:   Bind Mode:   Port:   8443   Username:   Password:   Certificate:	
Host:   Bind Mode:   O Normal  Secure     Port:   8443   Username:   Password:   Certificate:   Browse	
Bind Mode: Normal • Secure   Port: 8443   Username:	
Port:       8443         Username:	
Username: Password: Certificate: Browse Browse	
Password: Certificate: Browse	
Certificate:	
Execute Tests	
Test Description Component Status	Result
Fetch default context from LDAP server LDAP Server Not Ready	[View]
Verify connection to LDAP server LDAP Server Not Ready	[View]
Fetch and check LDAP version compatibility LDAP Server Not Ready	[View]
Verify user containers LDAP Server Not Ready	[View]
Extract all object classes LDAP Server Not Ready	[View]
Extract attributes of object class 'Person' LDAP Server Not Ready	[View]
Verify connection to Calendar Server Calendar Server Not Ready	[View]
Retrieve mailbox quota information Calendar Server Not Ready	[View]
Retrieving display name for room(s) Calendar Server Not Ready	[View]
Subscribe MS Exchange events for room Calendar Server Not Ready	[View]
Retrieve display name for scheduler LDAP Server Not Ready	[View]
Authenticate scheduler user LDAP Server Not Ready	[View]
Verify connection to Unified CM server Unified CM Not Ready	[View]
	<u> </u>

The Tool runs a series of tests to determine if your LDAP server, Calendar server, and Cisco Unified CM configurations meet the requirements to support CTS-Manager. The set of tests you run are determined by the Calendar server running on your network (IBM Domino or Microsoft Exchange). You can also run a set of tests without specifying a Calendar server.

In order to run a series of tests you need to provide the Tool with configuration information for your LDAP server, Calendar server, and Cisco Unified CM. The three tabbed windows display the Test forms used to enter configuration data.

The Test Status window displays the status of each test. Once you have run a set of tests you can view the results of each test in a Test Result window. The test results contain troubleshooting data needed to prepare your LDAP server, Calendar server, and Cisco Unified CM to work with CTS Manager.

If additional analysis is required to prepare your network, you can create a zip file for technical support that includes all the test results.

The Tool application window has three main areas which are explained in the next section.

# **Menu Commands**

The following sections cover the commands in the File menu.

### **File Menu Commands**

- The **New Profile** command saves all the Test form field values you have entered to a profile that can be used again.
- The Delete Profile command asks you to confirm your deletion of the active profile.
- The **Load Profile** command lists the saved profiles. You can choose which profile you want to use to run the PreQualification tests.



File System Help		New Profile
New Profile Delete Profile		Enter a profile name:
Load Profile  V Quit	Default domino exchange	OK Cancel

### System Menu Command

- The **Select Calendar Server** lists the Calendar servers. Choose Exchange, Domino, or None to display the corresponding Test Configuration forms.
- The **Execute Tests** command performs the same function as the Execute Test button displayed above the Test Status list at the bottom of the application window.

System Help	
Select Calendar Server	None
Execute Tests	Microsoft Exchange
Collect Logs	IBM Domino

- The **Collect Logs** command collects all the tests you've run into a zip file to make it easy to transport the results to Cisco Technical Support.
  - If you check the **Include Config Settings** checkbox, the values you entered into the Test Configuration forms are collected and included in the zipped report.

Figure 6-10 System Menu Commands

Report Generation	
Customer Name:	
Include Config Settings:	$\checkmark$
Additional Note:	
Save Report To:	Browse
	Generate

### **Test Configuration Forms Window**

The Test Configuration Forms window presents three areas, selected by individual tabs. The tabs display the LDAP/Calendar server configuration you've chosen from the Select Calendar Server command in the System menu.

Figure 6-11	The Forms Tabs Window
LDAP Server (D	Domino Directory) Calendar Server (IBM Domino) Unified CM
LDAP Server (A	active Directory) Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange) Unified CM
LDAP Server (0	Seneric) Unified CM
The Test Confi Forms section.	guration Form fields and how they are used are described in the Using Test Configuration

Figure 6-9 System Menu Commands

Note

# **Test Status Window**

The bottom of the application window lists the tests available.

Figure 6-12 The Test Status Window

Test Description	Component	Status	Result
Fetch default context from LDAP server	LDAP Server	Ready	[View]
Verify connection to LDAP server	LDAP Server	Ready	[View]
Fetch and check LDAP version compatibility	LDAP Server	Ready	[View]
Verify user containers	LDAP Server	Ready	[View]
Extract all object classes	LDAP Server	Ready	[View]
Extract attributes of object class 'Person'	LDAP Server	Ready	[View]
Verify connection to Calendar Server	Calendar Server	Ready	[View]
Retrieve mailbox quota information	Calendar Server	Ready	[View]
Retrieving display name for room(s)	Calendar Server	Ready	[View]
Subscribe MS Exchange events for room	Calendar Server	Ready	[View]
Retrieve display name for scheduler	LDAP Server	Ready	[View]
Authenticate scheduler user	LDAP Server	Ready	[View]
Verify connection to Unified CM server	Unified CM	Ready	[View]

#### Table 6-2 Test Status Columns

Test Description	This column describes the test.	
Component	This column displays the type of test.	
Status	This column displays the status of the test. The statuses are:	
	• Not Ready - All the required Test Configuration Form fields do not have values.	
	• <b>Ready</b> - All the required Test Confutation Form fields have the required vales entered.	
	• Not Applicable - The test will not be run, because the LDAP/Calendar server does not need the test results	
	• <b>Failed</b> - The test did not pass. Refer to the Test Results window by clicking the <b>View</b> button to the right of the failed test.	
	• <b>Passed</b> - The test passed. There are no configuration changes needed to support the test results.	
Result	This column contains the View buttons for viewing the results for each test.	

# **Using Test Configuration Forms**

There are three Test Configuration forms (LDAP server, Calendar server, and Cisco Unified CM). There are also three network environments (Exchange calendar server, Domino calendar server, and no calendar server). The Test Configuration forms are used to collect the data required to run the relevant tests for each network environment The sections below define the Test Configuration forms for each network environment.

### **Cisco Unified CM Test Configuration Form**

The Cisco Unified CM Test Configuration form requires the same data for all three network environments.

#### Figure 6-13 The Cisco Unified CM Test Configuration Form

-Host Configuration Host:		
Bind Mode:	○ Normal (● Secure	
Port:	8443	
Username:		
Password:		
Certificate:		Browse

 Table 6-3
 The Cisco Unified CM Test Configuration Form Fields

Field Name	Field Value
Host	The hostname or IP address of Cisco Unified CM
Bind Mode	This is always set to secure mode.
Port	This is always set to port 8443.
Username	Logon account with Cisco Unified CM Application User name. The admin username is not needed.
Password	Password for Cisco Unified CM Admin account.
Certificate	The full pathname to the Cisco Unified CM security certificate.

### Test(s) Enabled by this Test Configuration Form

• Verify connection to Cisco Unified CM server

## **Test Configuration Forms in a Generic Environment**

You can use the PreQualification Tool to test your LDAP server without specifying a calendar server.

### LDAP (Generic) Test Configuration Form

Host Configuration		
Host:		
Bind Mode:	Normal ○ Secure	
Port:	389	
Default Context:		
Username:		
Password:		
Certificate:		Browse
-Scheduler Authentication		
		Add
User Containers:		Delete
Scheduler Username:		
Scheduler Password:		

#### Figure 6-14 The LDAP Server (Generic) Test Configuration Form

#### Table 6-4 The LDAP Server (Generic) Test Configuration Form Fields

Field Name	Field Value
Host	The hostname or IP address of the LDAP server.
Bind Mode	If you set this to secure you'll need to provide a security certificate.
Port	In Normal bind mode the port setting is 389. In Secure bind mode the port setting default is 636.
Default Context	Enter the default context in the form $o=ciscoDev$

Field Name	Field Value	
Username	Enter the Username in the form cn=ctm account	
	<b>Note</b> You must also include the default context in the Username field. For example, $cn=ctm \ account, o=ciscoDev.$	
Password	Password for LDAP server with administrative privileges.	
Certificate	The full pathname to the LDAP security certificate. This is needed only if you are using the Secure Bind Mode.	
User Containers	The containers from which queries are performed to retrieve user objects. More than one user container or user object can be specified. The Cisco Telepresence server uses the values entered to search through the containers in sequence to retrieve user and meeting room information from the Directory Server. Additionally, these containers are used to retrieve user information for authentication.	
	User containers are entered in the Entry field above the User Containers field. Use the Add button to add a user container to the list. To delete a user container from the list, select the specific user container and click Delete.	
Scheduler Username	Not needed for generic LDAP environment.	
Scheduler Password	Not needed for generic LDAP environment.	

### Table 6-4 The LDAP Server (Generic) Test Configuration Form Fields (continued)

### Test(s) Enabled by this Test Configuration Form

- Verify connection to LDAP server
- Verify user containers
- Extract all object classes
- Extract attributes of object class 'Person'

# **Test Configuration Forms in a Microsoft Exchange Environment**

## LDAP Server (Active Directory) Test Configuration Form

Host:		
Bind Mode:	Normal O Secure	
Port:	389	
Default Context:		
Username:		
Password:		
Certificate:		Browse
Scheduler Authentication -		
Scheduler Authentication - User Containers:		Add Delete
User Containers:		

#### Figure 6-15 The LDAP Server (Active Directory) Test Configuration Form

### Table 6-5 The LDAP Server (Active Directory) Test Configuration Form Fields

Field Name Field Value		
Host	The hostname or IP address of the LDAP server.	
Bind Mode	If you set this to secure you'll need to provide a security certificate.	
Port	In Normal bind mode the port setting is 389. In Secure bind mode the port setting default is 636.	
Default Context	Enter the default context in the form o=ciscoDev	

Field Name Field Value		
Username	Enter the Username in the form cn=ctm account	
	<b>Note</b> You must also include the default context in the Username field. For example, $cn=ctm\ account, o=ciscoDev.$	
Password	Password for LDAP server with administrative privileges.	
Certificate	The full pathname to the LDAP security certificate. This is needed only if you are using the Secure Bind Mode.	
User Containers	The containers from which queries are performed to retrieve user objects. More than one user container or user object can be specified. The Cisco Telepresence server uses the values entered to search through the containers in sequence to retrieve user and meeting room information from the Directory Server. Additionally, these containers are used to retrieve user information for authentication.	
	User containers are entered in the Entry field above the User Containers field. Use the Add button to add a user container to the list. To delete a user container from the list, select the specific user container and click Delete.	
Scheduler Username	The scheduler username is the value of an end user ID.	
Scheduler Password	The password associated with the scheduler username.	

### Table 6-5 The LDAP Server (Active Directory) Test Configuration Form Fields (continued)

#### Test(s) Enabled by this Test Configuration Form

- Verify connection to LDAP server
- Verify user containers
- Extract all object classes
- Extract attributes of object class "Person"
- Retrieve display name for scheduler
- Authenticate scheduler user

# **Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange) Test Configuration Form**

Host:		
Bind Mode:	💿 Normal 🛛 Secure	
Port:	80	
SMTP LHS:		
Password:		
Certificate;		Browse
Logon Name:		
Domain:		
20main		
Room Subscription		
Room Subscription		Add
		Add Delete
Room Subscription		
Room Subscription		

#### Figure 6-16 The Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange) Test Configuration Form

#### Table 6-6 The Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange) Test Configuration Form Fields

Field Name	Field Value	
Host	The hostname or IP address of the Exchange server.	
Bind Mode	If you set this to secure you'll need to provide a security certificate.	
Port	In Normal bind mode the port setting is 80. In Secure bind mode the port setting default is 443.	
SMTP LHS	Enter the LHS for an account with full access or read access to rooms.	
Password	Enter the password for the Exchange administrative account, using English characters only.	

Field Name	Field Value
Certificate	The full pathname to the Exchange security certificate. This is needed only if you are using the Secure Bind Mode.
Logon Name	Enter the logon name for the full access or read access privileges to rooms. Enter the logon name in the same form as the SMTP LHS.
Domain	Enter the domain for the logon name.
Room Email IDs	Enter the full email address for each CTS endpoint.

### Table 6-6 The Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange) Test Configuration Form Fields (continued)

### Test(s) Enabled by this Test Configuration Form

- Verify connection to Calendar Server
- Retrieve mailbox quota information
- Retrieving display name for room(s)
- Subscribe MS Exchange events for room

# **Test Configuration Forms in an IBM Domino Environment**

### LDAP (Domino Directory) Test Configuration Form

-Host Configuration		
Host:		
Bind Mode:	Normal ○ Secure	
Port:	389	
Default Context:		
Username:		
Password:		
Certificate:		Browse
Scheduler Authentication		
User Containers:		Add Delete
Scheduler Username:		
Scheduler Password:		
Juneaaler Passwora;	1	

#### Figure 6-17 The LDAP Server (Domino Directory) Test Configuration Form

Table 6-7	The LDAP Server (Domino Directory) Test Configuration Form Fields
-----------	---

Field Name Field Value	
Host	The hostname or IP address of the LDAP server.
Bind Mode	If you set this to secure you'll need to provide a security certificate.
Port	In Normal bind mode the port setting is 389. In Secure bind mode the port setting default is 636.
Default Context	Enter the default context in the form $o=ciscoDev$

Field Name	Field Value
Username	Enter the Username in the form cn=ctm account
	<b>Note</b> You must also include the default context in the Username field. For example, <i>cn=ctm account,o=ciscoDev.</i>
Password	Password for LDAP server with read privileges.
Certificate	The full pathname to the LDAP security certificate. This is needed only if you are using the Secure Bind Mode.
User Containers	The containers from which queries are performed to retrieve user objects. More than one user container or user object can be specified. The Cisco Telepresence server uses the values entered to search through the containers in sequence to retrieve user and meeting room information from the Directory Server. Additionally, these containers are used to retrieve user information for authentication. User containers are entered in the Entry field above the User Containers field. Use the Add
	button to add a user container to the list. To delete a user container from the list, select the specific user container and click Delete.
Scheduler Username	The scheduler username is the value of an end user ID.
Scheduler Password	The password for the scheduler account.

#### Table 6-7 The LDAP Server (Domino Directory) Test Configuration Form Fields (continued)

#### Test(s) Enabled by this Test Configuration Form

- Verify connection to LDAP server
- Verify user containers
- Extract all object classes
- Extract attributes of object class 'Person'
- Retrieve display name for scheduler
- Authenticate scheduler user

# **Calendar Server (IBM Domino) Test Configuration Form**

Host:		
Bind Mode:	Normal ○ Secure	
Port:	80	
Username:		
Password:		
Certificate:		Browse
Organization Name:		
Resource DB:		
Room Subscription		
Room Subscription		Add Delete

### Figure 6-18 The Calendar Server (IBM Domino) Test Configuration Form

### Table 6-8 The Calendar Server (IBM Domino) Test Configuration Form Fields

Field Name	Field Value	
Host	The hostname or IP address of the Domino Calendar server.	
Bind Mode	If you set this to secure you'll need to provide a security certificate.	
Port	In Normal bind mode the port setting is 80. In Secure bind mode the port setting default is 443.	
Username	Enter the username in the form "John Test".	
Password	Enter the password for the username. The user must have a minimum of read permission on the resource database being used to test.	
Certificate	The full pathname to the Domino security certificate. This is needed only if you are using the Secure Bind Mode.	

Field Name	Field Value	
Organization Name	Enter the Domino Organization name.	
Resource DB	Enter the name of the resource DB. For example, <i>Telepres.nsf.</i>	
Room Email IDs	Enter the full email id for each CTS endpoint. The format for each email id is: <i>Testroom/Site1</i>	

### Table 6-8 The Calendar Server (IBM Domino) Test Configuration Form Fields (continued)

#### Test(s) Enabled by this Test Configuration Form

- Verify connection to Calendar Server
- Retrieve mailbox quota information
- Retrieve room to database mapping test
- Retrieving display name for room(s)
- Retrieve samples of calendar documents



CHAPTER **7** 

# Installing or Upgrading Cisco TelePresence Manager

Revised: July 28, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

# **Contents**

- Introduction, page 7-1
- System Information, page 7-2
- Installation Guidelines, page 7-2
- Installing Cisco TelePresence Manager from DVD, page 7-3
- Required Information and Equipment, page 7-3
- Recovering Administrator and Security Passwords, page 7-8
- Dashboard for Verification of Installation Status, page 7-9
- System Log Error Detection, page 7-11
- Software Upgrade, page 7-12
- Upgrading to Cisco TelePresence Manager 1.5, page 7-13

# Introduction

This document explains how to install the Cisco TelePresence Manager software in your network. You will then be able to schedule Cisco TelePresence system meetings through existing Microsoft Outlook messaging software or IBM Domino software, receive reminders, and connect to a remote meeting site with the touch of a button.

To enable these features, you must provide Cisco TelePresence Manager with the contact and access information it requires to connect to and talk with your network. The purpose of this guide is to walk you through each step using the Cisco TelePresence Manager installation DVD and the accompanying wizard help windows.

The installation requires information about your network and the rules for finding and exchanging information. Once this pre-installation data is set up, then the Cisco TelePresence Manager program can be installed from DVD. In addition, the administrator can use the System Configuration window to upgrading system software,

### **System Information**

The System Information window to see a quick summary of information about your Cisco TelePresence System. The window is divided into two areas:

- System Information lists model numbers, hostname, addresses, and hardware and software version information.
- Product Software Versions lists software currently configured in the system. It includes product names and version numbers.

SKU	CTS-MAN1.5	
Hostname	The name of the Cisco TelePresence Manager server (e.g. tsbu-ctm19).	
IP Address	The IP address of the Cisco TelePresence Manager server.	
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask of the Cisco TelePresence Manager server (e.g. 255.255.255.0).	
MAC Address	The MAC address of the Cisco TelePresence Manager server (e.g. 00:18:fe:73:58:14).	
Hardware Model	The hardware model of the Cisco TelePresence Manager server (e.g. 7835H2).	
Software Version	The version of Cisco TelePresence Manager software running on the server (e.g. 1.5.0.0).	
OS Version	The software version of the Cisco Unified Communications OS running on the Cisco TelePresence Manager server (e.g. CUCOS 3.0.0.44).	

Table 7-1System Information

# **Installation Guidelines**

The purpose of this guide is to reference the information you will need in order to install the CTS-MAN software.

The flow of tasks you need to perform to install and configure the CTS-MAN are provided in the following table.

Table 7-2 Install Guide for setting up CTS-MAN

Set-Up Procedure Guidelines after Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location
Initializing CTS-MAN	After installing the CTS-MAN software, the next process is initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager to enable access to information sources such as Microsoft Exchange Server for meeting requests from Microsoft Outlook, Active Directory for accessing user and conference room information, and Cisco Unified Communications Manager for conference room availability and telephone support	Chapter 8, "Initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Additional Installation Procedures for CTS-MAN	The administrator makes use of the System Configuration window to perform system configuration tasks such as as synchronizing system databases, managing security, and reconfigure system settings	Chapter 9, "Additional Installation Configurations for Cisco TelePresence Manager"
Monitoring CTS-MAN	Monitoring and updating meeting schedules and monitoring the status of rooms and system services	Chapter 10, "Monitoring Cisco TelePresence Manager"

# Installing Cisco TelePresence Manager from DVD

The following section covers installation procedures for the CTS Manager.

### **Required Information and Equipment**

To install the Cisco TelePresence Manager system files, the following equipment and information are needed:

- The Model 7845 Cisco Media Convergence Server that came with Cisco TelePresence Manager, installed and connected to a Domain Name System (DNS) server and your network.
- The information, listed in Table 7-3, "Installation Field Definitions" that includes your system-specific values and parameters.
- A management console able to access the Model 7845 Cisco Media Convergence Server.
- The DVD included in your Cisco TelePresence Manager documentation and installation packet. Use the Installation Wizard included on this disk.

# Introduction to the CTS-Manager Administration Software

CTS-Manager Administration software is accessed through your browser. All Cisco TelePresence administration software supports Internet Explorer 6.0. CTS-Manager Administration software is accessed through the server's host name or IP address.

### Logging Into CTS-Manager

When doing a logon to the account to access the CTS-Manager functions, use:

- your email ID if using Microsoft Exchange
- your common name if using IBM Domino.

There are three levels of functionality when logging into CTS-Manager. Any user not in these access categories will only see their own meeting details.

### **Administrator Role**

When an administrator logs into the CTS-Manager, the following selections and information are available:

- System Information
- System Status
- Support
- System Configuration
- Troubleshooting

The administrator performs the same tasks performed by a concierge, but has an additional system configuration task available. The administrator has a different login name and password from that of the concierge. The administrator's access privileges allow access to the internal workings of the system where the administrator can modify system settings such as passwords, IP addresses, and security settings. The administrator is also responsible for defining schedules to back up the database and for assigning a concierge to a meeting room.

In day-to-day operations, the administrator assists the concierge with monitoring system status and, when problems occur, takes action to correct them by analyzing system error messages and debugging log files.

### **Superuser Role**

The system superuser has a special login account that allows access to two additional administrative tasks. These tasks are only visible by logging in using the superuser password. This role is used mainly during installation of CTS-MAN. After installation of CTS-MAN, this role will default to administrator.

- System Settings
- Software Upgrade
## **Concierge Role**

L

When a concierge logs into CTS-Manager, the following selections and information are available:

- System Information
- System Status
- Support
- Troubleshooting

The concierge is the first person contacted when there are questions or problems pertaining to connecting meeting participants. Concierges can be assigned rooms to monitor in the CTS-Manager application. Assigned concierges are easily reached by dialing the Help soft key on the Cisco IP phone in a Cisco TelePresence-enabled meeting room.

## Installation Procedure for Cisco TelePresence Manager

Step 1	Insert the Cisco TelePresence Manager installation DVD in the server.
	There may be a short delay while the installer validates the integrity of the files on the DVD and configures the server for the operating system and the Cisco TelePresence Manager software.
$\wedge$	
Caution	Remove the DVD from the DVD drive after the installation/upgrade is complete. Leaving the DVD in the drive can prevent Cisco TelePresence Manager from restarting properly after rebooting the server.
Step 2	The installer checks for a prior installation of Cisco TelePresence Manager software. Choose <b>Yes</b> to continue, or <b>No</b> to abort the installation.
Step 3	If you choose <b>Yes</b> to continue the installation, the Installation Wizard opens in the next window. Read and become familiar with the wizard conventions.
Step 4	Click <b>Proceed</b> .
Step 5	Fill in each window with the information defined in Table 7-3, "Installation Field Definitions".
Step 6	When you are satisfied that the information is correct, click <b>OK</b> in the Configuration Confirmation window to begin the installation process. Be patient while the process takes place.
	When the installation is complete, the server reboots. The installer then checks for network connectivity and access to a DNS server. If it cannot find these connections, an error message is displayed. If the installation process completes successfully, the message "The Installation of the Cisco TelePresence Manager Has Completed Successfully" is displayed.
$\wedge$	
Caution	Remove the DVD from the DVD drive after the installation/upgrade is complete. Leaving the DVD in the drive can prevent Cisco TelePresence Manager from restarting properly after rebooting the server.

### **Installation Field Values Defined**

Table 7-3 explains in detail the field definitions of the Cisco TelePresence Manager installation process in detail.

Installation Fields	Description and Usage
Installation Wizard	
Proceed:	The installation wizard requests necessary configuration information before installing Cisco TelePresence Manager files.
Skip:	Skip this wizard and install Cisco TelePresence Manager files without configuration information. After the files are installed and the system reboots, the installation program will request configuration information.
Cancel:	Cancel this installation.
utonegotiation Configuration	
NIC Speed	The speed of the server network interface card (NIC), in megabits per second.
	• The possible speeds are 10, 100, and 1000 mbps. <b>Default is 100 mbps</b> .
	<b>Note</b> Cisco recommends a NIC speed of at least 100 mbps for best performance.
Duplex Configuration	The duplex setting of the server NIC.
	• The possible settings are Half and Full. <b>Default is Full</b> .
	<b>Note</b> Cisco recommends full duplex for best performance.
HCP Configuration	
Host Name	A hostname is an alias that is assigned to an IP address to help identify it.
	• Enter a hostname that is unique to your network.
	• The hostname can consist of up to 64 characters and can contain alphanumeric characters and hyphens.
IP Address	The IP address uniquely identifies a server on your network.
	• Enter the IP address in the form <i>ddd.ddd.ddd.ddd</i> , where <i>ddd</i> can have a value from 0 to 255 (except 0.0.0.0).
IP Mask	The IP subnet mask of this machine. The subnet mask together with the IP address defines the network address and the host address.
	• Enter the IP mask in the form <i>ddd.ddd.ddd.ddd</i> , where <i>ddd</i> can have a value from 0 to 255 (except 0.0.0.0).
	Valid example: 255.255.240.0.
	Invalid example: 255.255.240.240.
GW Address	A network point that acts as an entrance to another network. Outbound packets are sent to the gateway that will forward them to their final destination.
	• Enter the IP address of the gateway in the format <i>ddd.ddd.ddd.ddd.ddd</i> , where <i>ddd</i> can have a value from 0 to 255 (except 0.0.0.0).
	<b>Note</b> If you do not have a gateway, you must still fill in this field by setting it to 255.255.255.255. Not having a gateway may limit you to communicating only with devices on your subnet.

Installation Fields	Description and Usage
DNS Client Configuration	You will be prompted to enter DNS server information. A DNS server is a device that resolves a hostname into an IP address or an IP address into a hostname.
	• If you do not have a DNS server, choose <b>No</b> . When DNS is disabled, you should enter only IP addresses (not hostnames) for all network devices in your Cisco TelePresence Manager network.
	<b>Note</b> If you have a DNS server, Cisco recommends choosing <b>Yes</b> to enable DNS. Disabling DNS limits the system's ability to resolve some domain names.
Primary DNS	Cisco TelePresence Manager contacts this DNS server first when attempting to resolve hostnames. This field is mandatory if DNS is set to <b>yes</b> .
Secondary DNS (optional)	When a primary DNS server fails, Cisco TelePresence Manager will attempt to connect to the secondary DNS server.
	• Enter the IP address in dotted decimal format as <i>ddd.ddd.ddd.ddd</i> , where <i>ddd</i> can have a value from 0 to 255 (except 0.0.0.0).
Domain	A sequence of case-insensitive ASCII labels separated by dots (for example, "cisco.com")—defined for subtrees in the Internet Domain Name System and used in other Internet identifiers, such as hostnames, mailbox names, and URLs.
Administrative Login Configuration	
Admin ID	The username for the Cisco TelePresence Manager Administrator. This is the administrator login that includes superuser permissions.
	• Ensure that the name is unique. It is recommended to start with a lowercase alphanumeric character and can contain alphanumeric characters (uppercase and lowercase), hyphens, and underscores.
	$\wedge$
	Caution         The admin ID cannot be changed after installation without reinstalling Cisco TelePresence Manager. Record it for safekeeping.
Password / Confirm	A password that allows the administrator to log into Cisco TelePresence Manager.
	• The password must be at least six characters long and maximum of 31 characters. It is recommended to start with a lowercase alphanumeric character, using English characters only. International characters are not supported in this version.
	This field can be changed at Cisco TelePresence Manager web interface. Record it for safekeeping.
	Recovering Administrator and Security Passwords
	If you lose the administrator password or security password, two different procedures can be followed to reset these passwords. These procedures are in the section following this table.

### Table 7-3 Installation Field Definitions (continued)

Installation Fields	Description and Usage
Certificate Signing Request Configuration	A certificate signing request (CSR) is a message sent from an applicant to a certificate authority in order to apply for a digital identity certificate.
	• These values create a CSR for the server where the certificate will be installed.
Organization	Your company or organization name.
Unit	Your business unit, group, or organizational unit name.
Location	The physical location of the organization, most often a city.
State	The region, state, province, or other region where the organization resides.
Country	Your company or organization country of record.
Network Time Protocol Client Configuration	NTP is used to synchronize the clocks on Cisco IP telephony servers with an external network time server that uses NTP.
NTP Server 1	Enter the hostname or IP address of one or more NTP server.
NTP Servers 2–5	• NTP Server 1 value is mandatory; NTP Servers 2–5 are optional.
	TipCisco strongly recommends that you enter the NTP server by which Cisco Unified CM synchronizes its clock as the primary NTP server. If these servers are out of synchronization, Cisco TelePresence Manager will not operate properly.
Database Access Security Configuration	Cisco TelePresence Manager uses the security password to communicate with its database.
Security Password / Confirm	• The password must be at least six characters long and a maximum of 31 characters. It is recommended to start with a lowercase alphanumeric character., using English characters only.

Table 7-3	Installation Field	Definitions	(continued)
-----------	--------------------	-------------	-------------

## **Recovering Administrator and Security Passwords**

If you lose the administrator password or security password, two different procedures can be followed to reset these passwords.

۵, Note

During this procedure, you must remove and then insert a valid DVD in the disk drive to prove that you have physical access to the system.

### **Recovery procedure 1:**

Step 1	Log in to the system with the following username and password:
	Username: <b>pwrecovery</b>
	Password: pwreset
Step 2	The Welcome to platform password reset window displays.
Step 3	Press any key to continue.
Step 4	If you have a DVD in the disk drive, remove it now.

- **Step 5** Press any key to continue. The system tests to ensure that you have removed the DVD from the disk drive.
- **Step 6** Insert a valid DVD into the disk drive. The system tests to ensure that you have inserted the disk.
- **Step 7** After the system verifies that you have inserted the disk, you see a prompt to enter one of the following options:
  - a. Enter **a** to reset the administrator password.
  - b. Enter s to reset the security password.
  - c. Enter q to quit.
- **Step 8** Enter a new password of the type that you chose.
- **Step 9** Reenter the new password.
- **Step 10** After the system verifies the strength of the new password, the password gets reset, and you're prompted to press any key to exit the password reset utility.

### **Recovery procedure 2:**

If your password is lost, reinstall Cisco TelePresence Manager to regain access.

## **Dashboard for Verification of Installation Status**

Go to the Dashboard window to verify installation and to check the status of the system services. In addition, you would choose Dashboard to provide a snapshot of meetings that are scheduled for the day in addition to showing the status of system services. This is a good place to monitor meetings and equipment. Click highlighted links in this window for quick access to other windows that provide meeting and room-scheduling functions.

Table 2-11 describes the dashboard report information. To update the reports, click Refresh.



### Figure 7-1 Cisco TelePresence Manager Support Window

Table 7-4 Dashboard Report

Field	Description or Setting
System Time	Day, date, and time in coordinated universal time (UTC, formerly known as Greenwich mean time or GMT).
Local Time	Local day, date, and time.
Today's Meetings	Status of current and upcoming meetings:
	• With Error—Reports the number of meetings that have errors.
	• All Meetings—All meetings scheduled for today.
	Click the link associated with each report to go to the Scheduled Meetings window.

Field	Description or Setting
Devices	Status report of the following devices:
	• Cisco TelePresence rooms—Clicking the link displays the Status tab in the Support > Rooms window.
	• Multipoint Conference Units (MCUs)—Clicking the link displays the Support > Multipoint Conference Unit window and filters the list to those MCUs with an error status.
	• Cisco Unified CM—Clicking the link displays the Support > Unified CM window.
	<b>Note</b> An error status may be reported if the connection to Cisco Unified CM was caused by a network outage. You can remove the error status by restarting Cisco TelePresence Manager.
Services	Status report of following system services:
	Calendar Server
	LDAP Server
	• Room Phone UI
	• Database
	Multipoint Conference
	• Discovery
	Status is either <b>OK</b> or is a highlighted link listing the number of errors. You can click a link to see further status information and resolve problems. You can also pass your mouse over a highlighted link to see a brief description of the error.
Uptime	Status reporting uptime since the last restart.
	• Services refers to the list of services above.
	• TelePresence Engine refers to the Cisco TelePresence database engine.
	• System Platform refers to the hardware host for CTS-Manager.

# **System Log Error Detection**

When a problem is detected, you must collect system errors and logs files so they can be analyzed for prompt resolution

# System Log

Choose the System Log window to see a list of system messages. You can filter the list by starting and ending dates and message type All, Fatal, Severe, Moderate, Warning, and Info, as follows:

- Use the Calendar icon to choose dates, or type the dates in the **Start On** and **End On** fields using the MM/DD/YYYY date format.
- Click **Filter** to generate the list.

#### Figure 7-2 System Log Window

Trou	bleshooting > System Log							
Sys	tem Log							
Sta	art on: 12/8/2008	·····	End on:	12/8/2008		Type: Al		Filter
							Showing 1 - 1 (	of 1 records
	Time stamp (+) 🔻	Туре	ID 🔻	Module 🔻		Mes	sage	
0	12/08/2008 11:18 AM	SEVERE	3801	MultipointMgr	Failed to auth	nenticate with I	MCU 'tsbu-ctm17	'.
Fin	st] < Previous Next >	Last Ro	ws Per Page	e: 10 ¥				Details

(+) All times are shown in time zone America/Los\_Angeles (GMT -8.0)

Table 7-5 lists the error information provided by the system.

Table 7-5 System Error Report

Field	Description
Timestamp	Date and time the message was logged. You can sort the messages in ascending or descending order by the time stamp.
Туре	Message type.
ID	Message identification number. You can sort the reports in ascending or descending order by ID.
Module	Component within CTS-Manager that generated the error.
Message	Explanation of problem detected. Move your mouse pointer over a message field to see a complete description.

If it is necessary to drill down further into error data, go to the Log files. For further information about Log details, go to Chapter 13, "Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager"

# Software Upgrade

If you are the system administrator and know the superuser password, you can access the Software Upgrade window to monitor and maintain system software. This window reports the version number of the system software. There are also two buttons to assist you in version maintenance between primary and backup and upgrading the system software, as follows:

### Figure 7-3 System Configuration - Software Upgrade Window

Active Version:	1.5.0.0-272	
Inactive Version:	Not Available	
		Switch Versions Upgrade Software
ost Recent Upgrade	Attempt	
Time:	Attempt Not Available Not Available	
Time: Status:	Not Available	
fost Recent Upgrade Time: Status: From Version: To Version:	Not Available Not Available	

- Switch Version—The hard drive on the server on which this CTS-Manager is installed is partitioned into two areas. Each area can contain a system image. The **Switch Version** button allows you to switch between the Active and Inactive versions of the system software.
- Upgrade Software—This button loads a patch file for upgrading system software. The Cisco-supplied patch file can be stored on a CD-ROM or a Secure FTP (SFTP) host network. A wizard displays dialog boxes to prompt you through the process. In addition to SFTP, FTP is also supported on a best-effort basis due to variations of behavior between different FTP servers. Only username/password-based login is supported. Anonymous login is not supported. Secure FTP (SFTP) is the recommended mode for downloading the upgrade software over the network.

## **Upgrading to Cisco TelePresence Manager 1.5**

Switching calendar application type, e.g. changing from Exchange to Domino, during Cisco TelePresence Manager upgrade is not supported. A fresh install is required to install Cisco TelePresence Manager for Domino deployment.

- Software upgrade is only supported from CTS-Manager 1.3 or 1.4 to 1.5.
- Data are automatically migrated during software upgrade, with the exceptions of:
  - custom settings, such as custom email templates or custom flags.
  - log or debug settings
  - log files
- Perform a backup before performing a CTS-Manager upgrade and another backup after upgrade is completed and verified.
- If for any reason you must revert to a previous release after the upgrade is completed, you can switch to the old partition from CTS-Manager.

### **Switch Version**

The hard drive on the CTS-MAN server is divided into two partitions. CTS-MAN is always using the Active partition and contains the Active software version. The software image versions are identified in the System Configuration> Software Upgrade window.

You may find it necessary to switch the version of the CTS-Manager software.

• To switch between the two software versions stored in the partitions, click the **Switch Version** button.

The system will swap the software versions and reboot. Screens will describe activity.

## **Upgrade Software**

This task upgrades the CTS-Manager software by loading and applying a patch file from either a CD-ROM or an SFTP/FTP host network. Before starting this task, determine the source of the patch file.

• To start the software upgrade process, click the **Upgrade Software** button. The Source Selection dialog box appears.



Once you have launched the Upgrade Wizard the upgrade process cannot be started by any other user logged into the same Cisco TelePresence Manager server.

Click the CD-ROM or Network radio button to choose the location of the patch file.

If you chose CD-ROM, click Next to go to the File Selection window.

If you chose Network, provide the following information, and then click **Next** to go to the File Selection window.

- **Host**—The hostname of the network server.
- **Port**—The port. By default, port 22 is used to access the server; supply the correct port number, if required.



If you choose to perform the software upgrade using FTP you do not need to supply a port number.

- Username and Password—The user account and password needed to log into the server.
- Storage Path—The file path to the patch file, e.g. /localview/ctm\_patch



Perform FTP for Upgrade, Backup and Restore on a best-effort basis, due to potential variations in the responses sent by the FTP server. Only username/password-based login is supported. Anonymous login is not supported.

Secure FTP (SFTP) is the recommended mode of transferring files over the network.

🕋 Software	Source Selection				
🐏 Upgrade		Select the source of the patch file. CD-ROM is the CD-ROM drive mounted on the appliance itself. Network is a SFTP host.			
1 - Source Selection	0.00.000				
2 - File Selection	○ CD-ROM ④ Netv	work			
3 - Patch File Preparation	⊙ SFTP ○ FTP				
4 - Confirmation	Host:		280		
5 - Progress	Port:	22	aic		
	Username:		*		
	Password:		:#:		
	Storage Path:		:#:		

### Figure 7-4 Software Upgrade - Source Selection Window

• At the File Selection window, choose the file to load by clicking its radio button. Then click Next.

🖉 tsbu-ctm29 - Cisco TelePresence 🖉	ı-ctm29 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog		
Software Upgrade	File Selection Select a patch file to upgrade to.		
1 - Source Selection	Available Patch Files	L	
2 - File Selection	/kickstart_ffd/patch/cisco-ctsman-k9-patch-1.5.0.0- 336.tar.gz		
3 - Patch File Preparation	:		
4 - Confirmation			
5 - Progress			
	Back Next > Cancel		

### Figure 7-5 Software Upgrade - File Selection window

• The Patch File Preparation window appears. Watch this window to monitor the progress of the file download. Buttons will be inactive until the patch file is loaded.



#### Figure 7-6 Software Upgrade - Patch File Preparation Window

• Once the file is loaded, the window displays a Confirmation message.

The software wizard displays the software versions that are installed and provides active Yes and No radio buttons so you can choose to switch the newly loaded software to the active partition.

• Click Yes or No to make your choice. Then click Next to finish the software upgrade task.



🕗 tsbu-ctm29 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog 🛛 🔀				
Software	Confirmation			
Upgrade Upgrade	Click Next to proceed with the upgrade.			
1 - Source Selection	Active Version:	1.5.0.0-334		
2 - File Selection	Inactive Version:	Not Available		
3 - Patch File Preparation	Selected patch version:	1.5.0.0-336		
4 - Confirmation				
5 - Progress	Automatically switch version after upgrade?	○Yes ○No		
	< Ba	ack Next > Cancel		
Note When you click Yes, you can still cancel the upgrade.				

<u>A</u> Caution

Once you click Next to confirm, you cannot cancel the upgrade.

The install wizard displays a dialog window that logs the progress of the update.

### Figure 7-8 Software Upgrade - Progress Window



• When the log indicates that the files have been switched, click Finish to complete this task.



If you selected to automatically switch to the new version, a message is displayed letting you know there is no connectivity to the server during the switch.



Figure 7-9 Software Upgrade - CTM Upgrade Completed Window

# **Cisco TelePresence Manager Window**

The Cisco TelePresence Manager window is divided into several panes with different functionality.

## **Header Pane**

Figure 7-10 Cisco TelePresence Manager Header Pane

cisco TelePresence Manager

admin | Logout | Preferences | Help | About

A header at the top of all CTS-Manager windows shows either "admin" or the login name of the concierge currently logged in and provides four links:

- Logout—Click to log out of the system.
- Preferences—Click to display the Browser's location information.
- Help—Click to display online help for using the CTS-Manager.
- About—Click to display licensing information.

Figure 7-11

### **System Status Pane**

System Status		Q
Today's Meeting With Error:	s:	0
In Progress:		0
Scheduled:	0	1
Other Errors:	$\odot$	5

System Status Pane

Other Errors: 8 5

System Status is always in view in the lower left corner of the CTS-Manager window. Both the concierge and the administrator must closely monitor this area for notification of system errors and changes in the status of today's meetings.

The icons and numbers are links. They will take you to a window in the CTS-Manager that helps you identify problems for the With Error state or see more information about meetings in the In Progress and Scheduled states.

The following meeting states are displayed for Today's Meetings:

- With Error
- In Progress
- Scheduled

The Other Errors area displays a cumulative number of errors listed in the Dashboard.

### **Navigation Pane**

Host: tsbu-ctm18 System Information Support Dashboard Scheduled Meetings 🛱 Rooms A MCU Devices 🐨 Unified CM System Configuration A Security Settings 🛃 Database 🚯 Microsoft Exchange 🜆 LDAP Server 😪 Discovery Service 😪 MCU Devices 📸 Concierges 🎇 Access Management 👼 Policy Management 🝇 System Settings Application Settings 🔞 Software Upgrade Troubleshooting 🕷 System Log

🔬 Log Files

Figure 7-12 Navigation Pane

The navigation pane contains the list of commands you can run within Cisco TelePresence Manager. The commands are divided into three drop-down lists:

- **Support** This drop-down list contains commands available to a Concierge, Administrator, or Superuser.
- System Configuration This drop-down list contains commands available to an Administrator or Superuser. If you log in as a Superuser the System Settings and Software Upgrade commands are included in the list.
- **Troubleshooting** This drop-down list contains commands available to an Administrator or Superuser.

### **Work Pane**

### Figure 7-13 Work Pane

SKU:	CTS-MAN1.5	
Hostname:	tsbu-ctm18	
IP Address:	172.28.68.165	
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	
MAC Address:	00:1a:4b:33:2f:ec	
Hardware Model:	7835H2	
Software Version:	1.5.0.0 (272)	
OS Version:	UCOS 4.0.0.0-7	

Product Software Versions				
Product Name	Supported	Actual		
Microsoft Exchange	[08.00.10685, 08.01.10240, 6.5.6944, 6.5.7226, 6.5.7638]	6.5.7638		
Active Directory	[2003]	2003		
Cisco Unified Communications Manager	[6.1.2]	6.1.2.2000(1)		

The frame to the right of the Navigation pane is the content area. The gray bar above the content area shows the navigational path so you can see where you are at any time.

The following sections describe objects, functions, and information displayed in the Work pane associated with a specific command.

### Tabs

Some windows have tabs that you click to display additional functionality related to a command.

### **Filtering Information**

Some windows provide fields where you can enter criteria to filter the information contained is a report. Click the Filter button to display the reports using the criteria you specify. The settings are temporary; when you exit the page, the criteria are removed.

### **Obtaining Additional Information and Help**

To access additional information or relevant windows, click a highlighted link.

### **Navigating Long Lists**

When there is a long list of data in a window, you can navigate through it using Next, Last, First, and Previous buttons at the bottom of the window. The Rows Per Page drop-down list also found at the bottom of the window can be used to change the number of rows displayed. Choose 10, 20, 50, or 100 rows per page. The setting is temporary, and when you exit the page the default setting is restored.

### **Copying and Pasting Information**

You can place information displayed by the CTS-Manager in a file using standard copy-and-paste functions.

### **Typing Information in Fields**

For information provided in fields, use the mouse to highlight and delete existing information. Type in new information.

New or modified information is applied using the Apply button.

To back out of changes and return to original settings, use the Reset button.

### **Typing Telephone Numbers**

Telephone numbers must be entered into CTS-Manager fields exactly as they will be dialed by the IP phone. For example, if you need to dial 9 to get an outside telephone line and you are calling a different area code or international dialing code, you must provide all the required numbers to the CTS-Manager in the exact sequence in which they should be dialed. The following is an example: **915105550100**.

### **Typing Meeting Room Names**

The names of meeting rooms must be typed into CTS-Manager fields exactly as they are stored in your Microsoft Exchange, or IBM Domino database. If a room is listed as M-Room 1/3 at Main in the Microsoft Outlook or Lotus Notes list of resources, that name must be typed exactly the same way in the CTS-Manager. Otherwise, the system will not be able to match records and an error occurs.

### **Viewing All Information**

Sometimes only a portion of text is visible and is completed by ellipses. You can see the full text in a tooltip by slowly passing the mouse pointer over the partial text. You can do this in any field in the user interface where text is cut off.

## **Preferences**

Clicking Preferences in the header pane displays the Preferences window.

### Figure 7-14 Preferences Link in the Header Pane



The first time you login you need to specify the timezone you are in. This localizes Cisco TelePresence Manager's meeting times to your location. You can use the Preferences window to change the timezone.

### Figure 7-15 Preferences window

e	🖻 tsbu-ctm18 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog					
	User Preferences					
	Browser's Location: America/Los Angeles (GMT -8.0)  Selected location observes DST: Yes					
Previous login: 12/06/2008 12:00 AM from 172.28.68.169 Save Cancel						





# **Initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager**

Revised: July 28, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

## Contents

- Introduction, page 8-1
- Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN, page 8-2
- Initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager After Installation, page 8-3
- Required Information and Equipment, page 8-3
- Initialization for Microsoft Exchange Deployments, page 8-3
- Explanation of LDAP Access Setting Fields, page 8-5
- Explanation of Field Mappings Fields, page 8-7
- Explanation of Cisco Unified Communications Manager Fields, page 8-9
- Explanation of Microsoft Exchange Fields, page 8-10
- Explanation of Database Backup Schedule Fields, page 8-11
- Microsoft Exchange Calendar Service Window, page 8-12
- Initialization for IBM Domino Deployments, page 8-15
- Explanation of LDAP Access Setting Fields, page 8-17
- Explanation of LDAP User Auth Setting Fields, page 8-18
- Explanation of Cisco Unified Communications Manager Fields, page 8-20
- Explanation of IBM Domino Fields, page 8-21

## Introduction

After installing the Cisco TelePresence Manager, the next step is to initialize the program.

The next process is initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager to enable access to information sources such as Microsoft Exchange Server for meeting requests from Microsoft Outlook, Active Directory for accessing user and conference room information, and Cisco Unified Communications Manager for conference room availability and telephone support.

The tasks for initializing the Cisco TelePresence Manager are described in the following sections.

# **Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN**

The purpose of this guide is to outline the information you will need to reference in order to initialize the CTS-MAN system after installing the CTS-MAN.

The flow of tasks you need to do for additional configurations the CTS-MAN are provided in the following table.

Set-Up Procedure Guidelines after Installing CTR-MAN	Description	Location Current Chapter	
Initializing CTS-MAN	After installing the CTS-MAN software, the next process is initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager to enable access to information sources such as Microsoft Exchange Server for meeting requests from Microsoft Outlook, Active Directory for accessing user and conference room information, and Cisco Unified Communications Manager for conference room availability and telephone support		
Additional Configuration Procedures for CTS-MAN	The administrator makes use of the System Configuration window to perform system configuration tasks such as as synchronizing system databases, managing security, and reconfigure system settings	Chapter 10, "Monitoring Cisco TelePresence Manager"	
Email and Meeting Action Requirements	The Calendar service (either Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino) sends an acceptance email to the meeting organizer, with the notice that the rooms have been reserved and placed on the calendar. CTS-Manager also sends either a Confirmation email or an Action Required email to the meeting organizer when a meeting is scheduled	Chapter 11, "CTS-MAN Email and End-User Web UI"	

### Table 8-1 Post-Install Procedure Guidelines for setting up CTS-MAN

If at any time you encounter problems, go to Chapter 13, Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager to see how to correct the problem.

## Initializing Cisco TelePresence Manager After Installation

This section contains the following topics pertaining to initialization:

- Required Information and Equipment, page 8-3
- Initialization Procedure, page 8-3

To initialize Cisco TelePresence Manager, you must enter contact and access information for your Microsoft Exchange Server, Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, and Cisco Unified CM in a series of one-time-only, post-installation initialization windows.

## **Required Information and Equipment**

To set up and initialize Cisco TelePresence Manager, you need the information previously entered or created during pre-installation.

Additionally, Cisco TelePresence Manager must have network access to a computer running Windows Explorer version 6.0, Microsoft Exchange Server and Active Directory server or IBM Domino Server and Domino Directory Server, and Cisco Unified Communications Manager.

### **Initialization Procedure**

The system administrator can access and change the information after initialization from the Configuration tab of the Cisco TelePresence Manager web interface.

### Initialization for Microsoft Exchange Deployments

**Step 1** At the console running Microsoft Explorer, type the Cisco TelePresence Manager server name or the IP address. See the following example.

https:// server hostname or IP address

**Step 2** The Initial Preferences window is displayed. Choose the timezone from the drop-down menu. The timezone you choose should be the one you are located in. Click **Continue**.

#### Figure 8-1 Initial Preferences Window

To assist Cisco TelePresence System Manager in showing date and time properly, specify the location in which the computer is located.

Note that time zones of the same offset might or might not observe daylight saving time (DST). Ensure that appropriate location is selected.

Browser's Location:	×
Selected location observes DST:	
	Continue

- Step 3 At the product page that appears, click on Cisco TelePresence Manager.
- Step 4 At the login page, enter the username and password created during installation.

The Cisco TelePresence Manager initial window appears with several fields already populated from the installation process. Review it and click **Next**.

**Step 5** The Calendar Server Selection window is displayed. See .

Choose Microsoft Exchange for this deployment and click Next.

#### Figure 8-2 Calendar Server Selection Window

	Cisco TelePresence	Calendar Server		
Manager		Select the email server to go to next step.		
1 - We	lcome	O Microsoft Exchange		
2 - Calendar Server Selection 3 - LDAP Access Setting 4 - LDAP User Auth Setting				
		<ul> <li>None</li> </ul>		
6 - Un	ified CM	Selection of Calendar server will display corresponding server set up screen in a coming step. If none is selected ,the Calendar Server configuration step will be skipped.		
7 - Database Backup Schedule		selected file calendar berver configuration step will be skipped.		

Step 6 The LDAP Access Setting window opens. See Figure 8-3. Fill in the fields and click Test Connection.

The system tests the connection information. A popup window opens and displays "Connection .... Verified." Click **OK**, then click **Next**.



If the system cannot verify the connection, the popup window directs the user to re-enter the information.

### Figure 8-3 LDAP Access Setting Window

Cisco TelePresence	LDAP Access Setting			
Wanager Manager	Enter host and user account information that allows Cisco TelePresence Manager to access the LDAP server. O must be tested and verified before you can advance to the next step.			nection to the LDA
1 - Welcome	Host:	tsbu-sr6	1	*
2 - Calendar Server Selection	Host.	lisbu-sio		
3 - LDAP Access Setting	Bind Method:	🔘 Secure 💿 Normal		
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting	Port:	389		*
5 - Field Mappings				*
6 - Cisco UCM	Default Context:	DC=srdev,DC=com	Fetch DNs	*
7 - Calendar Server 8 - Database Backup Schedule	Username:	cn=administrator,cn=users	Append default context	*
	Password:	•••••	]	*
	Certificate:		Browse	*
	<ul> <li>Port: the port or</li> <li>Default Context from the given I</li> </ul>	server host name or IP address. n which the LDAP server is running. : the base DN (e.g. ou=department, host.	nnection o=building,o=state,dc=com). Use 'Fetch DNs' to pick fro ess to the server (e.g. cn=administrator). Check 'Appe	

### Explanation of LDAP Access Setting Fields

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a protocol definition for accessing directories. The LDAP Access Settings window specifies LDAP Active Directory server settings that are used by Cisco TelePresence Manager to access the directory information. This window contains the following fields:

• Host

The hostname is an alias that is assigned to an IP address for identification.

- Enter the hostname of the LDAP server.
- The hostname consists of up to 64 characters and can contain alphanumeric characters and hyphens, English characters only.
- Bind Method

The bind method is the type of security required.

- Secure—Secure Socket Layer (SSL) connection requires the Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) Certificate for the LDAP server. You must complete the Certificate field on this window before you can proceed.
- Normal—The CTS-Manager communicates with the LDAP server in cleartext using HTTP. In normal mode, you do not need to complete the Certificate field.
- Port
  - The default port for secure SSL connection is 636.
  - The default port for normal SSL connection for multiple servers is 3268.
  - The default port for secure SSL connection for multiple servers is 3269.
  - The default port for normal connection for a single server is 389.
- Default Context

Default Context is the context from which the LDAP queries are performed. To change the default context, choose it in the Fetch DNs drop-down list adjacent to this field.

Username

The username provides identification of the user to the LDAP server.

- The format must be in the LDAP fully qualified domain name (FQDN) format.
- Examples: cn=administrator, ch=users, dc=<mydomain>, dc=com
- Append default context

Check this box to avoid typing in the LDAP Access username manually, keeping the requirements of the LDAP FQDN format. If this box is not checked, you must append the information in the Default Context field.

• Password

The user password allows access to the LDAP server.

The password must contain at least six characters and maximum of 31 characters and should be unique. It must start with a lowercase alphanumeric character and be English characters. International characters are not supported.

• Certificate

The certificate is a digital representation of user or device attributes, including a public key, that is signed with an authoritative private key.

**Step 7** The LDAP User Auth Setting window is displayed. See Figure 8-4.

Fill in the fields and click Verify Container DN.

The system tests the container information. A popup window opens and displays "User container <...> validated successfully." Click **OK**, then **Next**.



If the system cannot verify the container information, the popup window directs the user to re-enter the information.

Figure 8-4 LDAP User Authorization Settings Window

Cisco TelePresence	LDAP User Auth Setting			
🍄 Manager	Enter the user container Relative Distinguished Names (RDNs) for LDAP users. The RDNs must be validated successfully before you advance to the next step.			
1 - Welcome 2 - Calendar Server Selection	Default Context:	DC=srdev,DC=com		
3 - LDAP Access Setting	User Containers:	cn=users  V Append default context *		
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting		Append default context		
5 - Field Mappings		Append default context		
6 - Cisco UCM		Append default context		
7 - Calendar Server				
8 - Database Backup Schedule		Append default context		
	<ul> <li>Verify Container DN</li> <li>Default Context: the DN that was entered in the previous screen.</li> <li>User Container: the DN of the container under which users can be found. Check 'Append default context' to enter just t</li> <li>* = Required Fields</li> </ul>			

## **LDAP User Authorization Setting Fields**

The LDAP User Auth Setting window contains the following fields:

• User Containers

The FQDN format name of the LDAP container in which CTS-Manager can find the list of users.

• Append default context

Check this box to meet the requirements of the LDAP FQDN format, or type in the Default Context after the User Container name yourself.

**Step 8** The Field Mapping window is displayed. See Figure 8-5.

The fields should be populated with information you have already entered.



System Config	uration > LDAP Server	
Settings Field	Mappings	
Person —		Attribute
	Object Class	
SchedulerName	Person	proxyaddresses
EmailID:	Person	proxyaddresses
DisplayName:	Person	displayname
EnterpriseCor	nfRoom	
-	bject Class	Attribute
EmailID:	Person	proxyaddresses
DisplayName: [	Person	displayname
		View Sample Data

## **Explanation of Field Mappings Fields**

The CTS-Manager server uses application objects and attributes that are internally mapped to the objects and attributes in the LDAP Directory Server. Most of these mappings are predefined and fixed. However, some of the information required for the Cisco TelePresence system may be stored in different attributes of the LDAP Directory Server, based on the enterprise deployment. The Field Mapping window provides a mechanism to map such objects and attributes used by the CTS-Manager server to the object and attributes defined in the LDAP Directory Server schema.



The Login of the user is dependent on the Field Mapping of the EmailID attribute, the administrator must notify users if this Field Mapping has changed.



The object and attribute mappings for Exchange/Directory Server deployments are listed in Table 8-2 and cannot be changed after installing and configuring Cisco TelePresence Manager. Cisco TelePresence Manager might not functions properly if the Object Class fields are changed. SchedulerName should not be changed unless Microsoft Exchange changes their mappings.

### Table 8-2 LDAP Objects and Attributes

Application Object	Application Attribute	LDAP Object Class	LDAP Attribute
Person			
	SchedulerName	Person	proxyaddresses
	EmailID	Person	proxyAddresses
	DisplayName	Person	displayname
EnterpriseConfRoom			I
	EmailID	Person	proxyAddresses
	DisplayName	Person	displayname



For more information about Field Mapping, see the Cisco TelePresence Manager online help.

#### **Step 9** When all information has been entered, click **View Sample Data**.

A popup window opens and displays the data that has been entered, see Figure 8-6. Review the information and verify that it is correct and complete, and click **Close**.

A popup window opens and displays the message "Does the data look correct to you?"

Click OK, then click Next.

#### Figure 8-6 System Configuration - LDAP Server Window

### System Configuration > LDAP Server Person SchedulerName --> EmailID --> DisplayName --> Person:proxyaddresses Person:proxyaddresses Person: displayname smtp:Administrator@mycisco.com smtp:Administrator@mycisco.com Administrator EnterpriseConfRoom EmailID --> Person:proxyaddresses DisplayName --> Person:displayname Administrator smtp:Administrator@mycisco.com Close

**Step 10** The Cisco **Unified CM** window is displayed. See Figure 8-7.

Fill in the fields and click Test Connection.

The system tests the connection information. A popup window opens and displays "Connection to <....> Server was Verified." Click **OK**, then click **Next**.

If the system cannot verify the connection, the popup window directs the user to reenter the information.



Cisco TelePresence	Cisco UCM			
🖤 Manager	Enter Cisco Unified Co you can advance to th		operties. Connection to the Cisco UCM server must be tested and verified	
1 - Welcome	Host:	tsbu-sr12	*	
2 - Calendar Server Selection	HUSL:	LSDU-SI12		
3 - LDAP Access Setting	Username:	ctmuser	*	
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting	Password:		*	
5 - Field Mappings	Password.			
6 - Cisco UCM	Certificate:		Browse *	
7 - Calendar Server				
8 - Database Backup Schedule		Test Connection		
		CallManager appliance box hostname word:Application user name and pas	e or IP address. ssword configured in CallManager to allow Cisco TelePresence Manager to	

## **Explanation of Cisco Unified Communications Manager Fields**

• Host

Host is the hostname or IP address of the Cisco Unified Communications Manager server host.

• Username

Username is the username for the application user for the Cisco Unified Communications Manager server.

• Password

The password allows the user to access the Cisco Unified Communications Manager.

• Certificate

The certificate is a digital representation of user or device attributes, including a public key, that is signed with an authoritative private key.

Step 11 The Microsoft Exchange window opens. See Figure 8-8.

Fill in the fields and click Test Connection.

The system tests the connection information. A popup window opens and displays the message "Connection to <....> Server was Verified." Click **OK**, then click **Next**.



If the system cannot verify the connection, the popup window directs the user to reenter the information.

<sup>&</sup>lt;u>Note</u>

#### Figure 8-8 Microsoft Exchange Window

Cisco TelePresence	Microsoft Exchange				
Wanager Manager	Enter Microsoft Exchange resource properties. Connection to the Microsoft Exchange server must be tested and verified advance to the next step.				
1 - Welcome 2 - Calendar Server Selection	Host:	tsbu-sr6 *			
3 - LDAP Access Setting	Bind Method:	⊖ Secure ④ Normal			
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting 5 - Field Mappings	Port:	80 *			
6 - Cisco UCM	Domain Name:	srdev.com *			
7 - Calendar Server	Logon Name:				
8 - Database Backup Schedule	SMTP LHS:	SuperUser *			
	Password:	*			
	Certificate:	Browse *			
	<ul> <li>Logon Name: u domain.</li> </ul>	Test Connection osoft Exchange server host name or IP address. user account that has read access to the Exchange server.This account name is used to log on to an Active Dire sword:Left hand side of the email address of the user account that has read access to the Exchange server.Past authentication.			

### **Explanation of Microsoft Exchange Fields**

• Host

Host is the hostname or IP address of the Microsoft Exchange Server host.

Bind Method

The bind method indicates the desired level of security.

- Secure—Secure Socket Layer (SSL) connection requires the Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) Certificate for the Microsoft Exchange Server. You must complete the Certificate field on this window before you can proceed.
- Normal—The Cisco TelePresence Manager communicates with the Microsoft Exchange Server in cleartext using HTTP.
- Port

The default value is 80.

• Domain Name

This field requires a sequence of case-insensitive ASCII labels separated by dots (for example, "cisco.com")—defined for subtrees in the Internet Domain Name System and used in other Internet identifiers, such as hostnames, mailbox names, and URLs.

• Username

The logon username should have read access to rooms.

Password

The user password allows access to the Microsoft Exchange Server.

• Certificate

A certificate is a digital representation of user or device attributes, including a public key, that is signed with an authoritative private key. In a self-signature, the signature can be verified using the public key contained in the certificate.

Note

Click the **Browse...** button to choose the Microsoft Exchange Server SSL certificate. If you selected Secure bind method, this value is required.

**Step 12** The Database Backup Schedule window opens. See Figure 8-9.

Fill in the fields. If you are setting up a remote backup, click **Verify Remote Host** to verify the login information.



The default is set to a daily backup schedule with the backup information stored to the local drive. Cisco recommends that you back up your data to a different drive.

Figure 8-9 Database Backup Schedule Window

Cisco TelePresence	Database Backup Schedule				
Manager Manager					
1 - Welcome	Schedule (GMT):	!Set back-up schedule!	Change		
2 - Calendar Server Selection	Number of backup files to keep:	14 🗸			
3 - LDAP Access Setting	Backup Type:	🔿 Local 💿 Remote			
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting	Backup Mode:	Sftp ○ Ftp			
5 - Field Mappings 6 - Cisco UCM	Remote Storage Host :		*		
7 - Calendar Server	Port:	22	36		
8 - Database Backup Schedule	Username:		*		
	Password:		34		
	Storage Path:		*		
	Storage Path.				
		Verify Remote Host			
	<ul> <li>Schedule: Select a schedule at which</li> </ul>	the machine is likely to be under the least load.			
	* = Required Fields				

## **Explanation of Database Backup Schedule Fields**

The Cisco Unified Communications Manager uses an Informix Database server to store information. This window allows the administrator to set up regular backup operations of the database.



Cisco strongly recommends scheduling regular backups of the database.

The Database Backup Schedule window contains the following fields:

• Schedule

Click Change... to set the backup schedule. The following choices are available:

- Start Time (UTC)

Enter the hour and minute, in UTC 24-hour format, for when you want your backup to begin. UTC is the atomic clock version of Universal Time (UT), formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time. Time zones around the world are expressed as positive and negative offsets from UT. For example, Midnight Pacific Standard Time (+8 UT) is 08:00 UT.

- Frequency

Choose **Daily** or **Weekly** database backups. If you choose Weekly, select the radio button beside the day of the week on which you want your backup to occur.

• Number of backup files to keep

From the drop-down menu, choose the number of backup files to keep before deleting. Choices range from 1 (default) to 14 (two week's worth of daily backups).

• Backup Type

Choose Local or Remote to designate the server for backups. If you choose Remote, you must fill in the following values for the remote server:

- Remote Storage Host (SFTP)

The network path to the remote Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) storage host.

- Port

Port number designated for the backup process. The default is port 22.

- User Name

Username for login of the remote server.

- User Password

Password for login to the remote server.

- Storage Path

The file path to the location where you want to store the backup data.

**Step 13** Click **Finish**, located at the bottom of the window.

The Cisco TelePresence Manager admin window appears at http://server hostname or IP address.

## **Microsoft Exchange Calendar Service Window**

The Microsoft Exchange Calendar Service window helps you manage the database that stores meeting information.

To test the connection between this system and the Microsoft Exchange server as shown in Figure 8-10Microsoft Exchange Calendar Service Window:

- Step 1 Click Test Connection.
- **Step 2** To register new or modified settings, click **Apply**.
- **Step 3** To restore the original settings, click **Reset**.



CTS-Manager only supports Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007, Enterprise Edition.

### Figure 8-10 Microsoft Exchange Calendar Service Window

System Configuration > Microsoft	Exchange					
Service Status:	ОК					
Mailbox Usage:	43.77% full (17508.0 of 40000.0 KB is used)					
Host:	tsbu-sr6		*			
Bind Method:	⊖Secure ⊙	Normal				
Port:	80		*			
Domain Name:	srdev.com		*			
Logon Name:	SuperUser					
SMTP LHS:	SuperUser		:4:			
Password:	•••••	•••••	• *			
Certificate:			Browse			
Number of Meetings Per Query:	100		*			
Subscription Status: All	*	Room:			Filter	Showing 1 - 4 of 4 record
Room Name 🔻		Last Sy	nchronization	n Time (+)		Subscription Status
TelepresenceRoom34			2/08/2008 12			Success
TelepresenceRoom32			✓ 12/08/2008 12:00 AM			Success
TelepresenceRoom31			2/08/2008 12			Success
TelepresenceRoom33		♥1	2/08/2008 12	2:00 AM		Success
First < Previous Next >	Last Rows Pe	r Page: 10 V				Re-sync Refresh
(+) All times are shown in time zone America/Los_Angeles (GMT -8.0)						

Table 8-3 describes the information and operations accessible from this window.

### Table 8-3 Microsoft Exchange Server

Field	Description or Settings
Service status	Display-only status report of system service.
Mailbox Usage	Meeting information is mailed to users. This display-only field reports the amount of storage space taken up by the e-mails as a percentage of total space available.
Host	Hostname provided for the Microsoft Exchange server account, which can be modified.

Field	Description or Settings				
Bind Method	Choose the <b>Secure</b> or <b>Normal</b> radio button to select the binding method, as follows:				
	• Secure—CTS-Manager communicates with the Microsoft Exchange server in secure mode using HTTPS. This method requires enabling Secure Socket Layer (SSL). on the Microsoft Exchange server.				
	• Normal—CTS-Manager communicates with the Microsoft Exchange server in cleartext using HTTP.				
Port	Communication port number.				
Domain Name	Domain name provided for the Microsoft Exchange server account, which can be changed.				
Logon Name	This is the account name used to log on to the Microsoft Exchange server. The value is dependent on the AD/Exchange configuration. For example, it is either ctsappaccount@mycompany.com or ctsappaccount.				
SMTP LHS	This is the left hand side (LHS) of the SMTP address for the account specified by the Logon Name. If the full SMTP address is <i>ctsappsmtp@mycompany.com</i> enter <i>ctsappsmtp</i> in this field.				
Password	Password used to access the Microsoft Exchange server account, which can be changed.				
Certificate	Use the field to provide a trust certificate for new Microsoft Exchange server.				
Number of Meetings Per Query	The maximum number of meetings that Cisco TelePresence Manager can retrieve from the Exchange server for each query.				

### Table 8-3 Microsoft Exchange Server (continued)

### **Re-sync Operations**

The Re-sync Operations area tells you when information in the Microsoft Exchange server database was last updated with meetings scheduled for a particular room.

When mismatched information in the databases causes meeting conflicts or there are other problems that prevent a meeting from being launched successfully, this area of the Microsoft Exchange window allows you to synchronize information between Microsoft Exchange and the CTS-Manager database. Synchronization takes time and system resources to accomplish and should be done only when necessary.

To synchronize information between Microsoft Exchange and the CTS-Manager database:

- **Step 1** Check the boxes next to the rooms to select them. To synchronize information for all meeting rooms, check the box next to **Room Name** in the display header.
- **Step 2** Click **Re-sync** to start the operation.

Once you've begun the Re-sync operation the Service Status field displays a **Sync progress** indicator showing the progress of the Re-sync operation by percentage.

- **Step 3** Once the synchronization operation completes, click **Refresh** to update the display.
- Step 4 Once the synchronization operation completes, click **Refresh** to update the display.
Table 8-4 describes the information displayed in this area of the Microsoft Exchange window.



A maximum of 100 rooms are displayed per page. If you have more than 100 rooms registered with Cisco TelePresence Manager you can click the Next button to display the additional rooms.

### Table 8-4 Microsoft Exchange Server Synchronization Report

Field	Description
Room Name	Name of the meeting room. Click the arrow in the header of the Room Name column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.
Last Synchronization Time	Time the synchronization operation was started.
Subscription Status	Status of the synchronization operation. Click the arrow in the header of the Room Name column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.

# **Initialization for IBM Domino Deployments**

**Step 1** At the console running Microsoft Explorer, type the Cisco TelePresence Manager server name or the IP address. See the following example if upgrading your system to 1.5 release.

https://7835 server hostname or IP address

Note If Installing a new CTS-MAN system, the server hardware version is 7845.

**Step 2** The Initial Preferences window is displayed. Choose the timezone from the drop-down menu. The timezone you choose should be the one you are located in. Click **Continue**.

### Figure 8-11 Initial Preferences Window

To assist Cisco TelePresence System Manager in showing date and time properly, specify the location in which the computer is located.

Note that time zones of the same offset might or might not observe daylight saving time (DST). Ensure that appropriate location is selected.

Browser's Location:	×
Selected location observes DST:	
	Continue

- Step 3 At the product page that appears, click on Cisco TelePresence Manager.
- **Step 4** At the login page, enter the username and password created during installation.

The Cisco TelePresence Manager initial window appears with several fields already populated from the installation process and click **Next**.

Step 5The Calendar Server Selection window is displayed. See Figure 8-12.Choose IBM Domino for this deployment and click Next.



Cisco TelePresence Manager	Calendar Server Select the email server to go to next step.			
1 - Welcome	O Microsoft Exchange			
2 - Calendar Server Selection				
3 - LDAP Access Setting				
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting	None			
5 - Field Mappings				
6 - Unified CM	Selection of Calendar server will display corresponding server set up screen in a coming step. If none is selected ,the Calendar Server configuration step will be skipped.			
7 - Database Backup Schedule				

**Step 6** The LDAP Access Setting window opens. See Figure 8-13. Fill in the fields and click **Test Connection**.

The system tests the connection information. A popup window opens and displays "Connection .... Verified." Click **OK**, then click **Next**.

**Note** If the system cannot verify the connection, the popup window directs the user to re-enter the information.

#### Figure 8-13 LDAP Access Setting Window

Cisco TelePresence	LDAP Access Settin	ng	
🍄 Manager		account information that allows Cisco TelePresence Manager to access the LDAP server. Connection to the L rerified before you can advance to the next step.	LDA
1 - Welcome 2 - Calendar Server Selection	Host:	tsbu-ctmpc4 *	
3 - LDAP Access Setting	Bind Method:	○ Secure ④ Normal	
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting 5 - Field Mappings	Port:	*	
6 - Cisco UCM	Default Context:	o=CiscoDev *	
7 - Calendar Server	Username:	cn=ctm account Append default context *	
8 - Database Backup Schedule	Password:	*	
	Certificate:	Browse *	
	<ul> <li>Port: the port of</li> <li>Default Context from the given</li> </ul>	Test Connection server host name or IP address. in which the LDAP server is running. t: the base DN (e.g. ou=department,o=building,o=state,dc=com). Use 'Fetch DNs' to pick from a list of DNs host. DN of the user ID that has READ access to the server (e.g. cn=administrator). Check 'Append default conte	

## **Explanation of LDAP Access Setting Fields**

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a protocol definition for accessing directories. The LDAP Access Settings window specifies LDAP Active Directory server settings that are used by Cisco TelePresence Manager to access the directory information. This window contains the following fields:

• Host

The hostname is an alias that is assigned to an IP address for identification.

- Enter a hostname that is unique to your network.
- The hostname consists of up to 64 characters and can contain alphanumeric characters and hyphens, using English characters. International characters are not recognized.
- Bind Method

The bind method is the type of security required.

- Secure—Secure Socket Layer (SSL) connection requires the Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) Certificate for the LDAP server. You must complete the Certificate field on this window before you can proceed.
- Normal—The Cisco TelePresence Manager communicates with the LDAP server in cleartext using HTTP. In normal mode, you do not need to complete the Certificate field.
- Port
  - The default port for secure SSL connection is 636.
  - The default port for normal SSL connection for multiple servers is 3268.
  - The default port for normal SSL connection for multiple servers is 3269.
  - The default port for normal connection for a single server is 389.
- Default Context

Default Context is the context from which the LDAP queries are performed. To change the default context, choose it in the Fetch DNs drop-down list adjacent to this field.

• Username

The username provides identification of the user to the LDAP server.

- The format must be in the LDAP fully qualified domain name (FQDN) format.
- Examples: cn=administrator, cn=users, dc=<mydomain>, dc=com
- Append default context

Check this box to avoid typing in the LDAP Access username manually, keeping the requirements of the LDAP FQDN format. If this box is not checked, you must append the information in the Default Context field.

• Password

The user password allows access to the LDAP server.

The password must contain at least six characters and maximum 31 characters and should be unique using English characters only. It must start with a lowercase alphanumeric character. International characters are not valid.

Certificate

The certificate is a digital representation of user or device attributes, including a public key, that is signed with an authoritative private key.

**Step 7** The LDAP User Auth Setting window is displayed. See Figure 8-14.

LDAP user containers should be added so that users are unique in these containers having no user overlap. If users belong to multiple user containers, for example, sales and HR, then only one container should be specified. If not the user, then the login to email link will fail. If the container at the organizational level is specified which with include everyone, then no other user container should be specified for the email link login to work. Fill in the fields and click **Verify Container DN**.

The system tests the container information. A popup window opens and displays "User container <...> validated successfully." Click **OK**, then **Next**.

Note

If the system cannot verify the container information, the popup window directs the user to re-enter the information.

Figure 8-14 LDAP User Authorization Settings Window

	Cisco TelePresence	LDAP User Auth Se	tting
	Manager	Enter the user contai advance to the next	ner Relative Distinguished Names (RDNs) for LDAP users. The RDNs must be validated successfully before you step.
2 - 0	Velcome alendar Server Selection DAP Access Setting	Default Context: User Containers:	o=CiscoDev b=CiscoDev Append default context *
4 - L	DAP User Auth Setting		Append default context
5 - F	ield Mappings		Append default context
	Cisco UCM		Append default context
7 - 0	alendar Server		
8 - C	atabase Backup Schedule		Append default context
			Verify Container DN
		<ul> <li>User Container</li> </ul>	t: the DN that was entered in the previous screen. : the DN of the container under which users can be found. Check 'Append default context' to enter just the RDM
		* = Required Fields	

### **Explanation of LDAP User Auth Setting Fields**

The LDAP User Auth Setting window contains the following fields:

• User Containers

The FQDN format name of the LDAP container in which Cisco TelePresence Manager can find the list of users.

Append default context

Check this box to meet the requirements of the LDAP FQDN format, or type in the Default Context after the User Container name yourself.

**Step 8** The Field Mapping window is displayed. See Figure 8-15.

The fields should be populated with information you have already entered.

### Figure 8-15 Field Mappings Window

Cisco TelePresence Manager	Field Mappings Select the object class and its attribute to map to the corresponding object field. Sample data must be visually verified before you or advance to the next step.				
1 - Welcome	Person				
2 - Calendar Server Selection		Object Class	Attribute		
3 - LDAP Access Setting	EmailID:	Person	cn		
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting	DisplavName:	Person	cn 😜		
5 - Field Mappings					
6 - Cisco UCM					
7 - Calendar Server					
8 - Database Backup Schedule		View Sample Data			

## **Explanation of Field Mappings Fields**

These attributes are used by the Domino LDAP server to retrieve the user's e-mail and display name information. For most of the Domino deployments, this information does not have to be changed. If this information is stored in other attributes in the LDAP server, use the following steps to change the mapping:



The object and attribute mappings for Domino/Directory Server deployments are listed in Table 8-5 and cannot be changed after installing and configuring CTS-Manager.

Table 8-5	LDAP Objects	and Attributes
		and Attinoutoo

Application Object	Application Attribute	LDAP Object Class	LDAP Attribute
Person			
	EmailID	Person	cn
	DisplayName	Person	cn



For more information about Field Mapping, see the Cisco TelePresence Manager online help.

### Step 9 When all information has been entered, click View Sample Data.

A popup window opens and displays the data that has been entered, see Figure 8-16. Review the information and verify that it is correct and complete, and click **Close**.

A popup window opens and displays the message "Does the data look correct to you?" Click **OK**, then click **Next**.

#### Figure 8-16 System Configuration - LDAP Server



Step 10 The Cisco Unified CM window is displayed. See Figure 8-17.

Fill in the fields and click Test Connection.

The system tests the connection information. A popup window opens and displays "Connection to <....> Server was Verified." Click **OK**, then click **Next**.

Note

If the system cannot verify the connection, the popup window directs the user to reenter the information.



Cisco TelePresence	Cisco UCM			
😵 Manager	Enter Cisco Unified Communications Manager resource properties. Connection to the Cisco UCM server must be tested and verified you can advance to the next step.			
1 - Welcome				
2 - Calendar Server Selection	Host:	tsbu-sr12	45	
3 - LDAP Access Setting	Username:	ctmuser	*	
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting	Password:	•••••	*	
5 - Field Mappings				
6 - Cisco UCM	Certificate:		Browse *	
7 - Calendar Server				
8 - Database Backup Schedule		Test Connection		
	<ul> <li>Host: the Cisco CallManager appliance box hostname or IP address.</li> <li>User Name/Password:Application user name and password configured in CallManager to allow Cisco TelePresence Manager to</li> </ul>			
	* = Required Fields			

# **Explanation of Cisco Unified Communications Manager Fields**

• Host

Host is the hostname or IP address of the Cisco Unified Communications Manager server host.

#### Username

Username is the username for the application user for the Cisco Unified Communications Manager server.

• Password

The password allows the user to access the Cisco Unified Communications Manager.

• Certificate

The certificate is a digital representation of user or device attributes, including a public key, that is signed with an authoritative private key.

**Step 11** The **IBM Domino** window opens. See Figure 8-18.

Fill in the fields and click Test Connection.

The system tests the connection information. A popup window opens and displays the message "Connection to <....> Server was Verified." Click **OK**, then click **Next**.



If the system cannot verify the connection, the popup window directs the user to reenter the information.



Cisco TelePresence	IBM Domino			
🍄 Manager	Enter IBM Domino resource properti next step.	es. Connection to the IBM Domino server must be tested and verifie	ed before you can advance	
1 - Welcome 2 - Calendar Server Selection	Host:	ksbu-ctmpc4 *	:	
3 - LDAP Access Setting	Bind Method:	○ Secure ④ Normal		
4 - LDAP User Auth Setting	Port:	80 *		
5 - Field Mappings 6 - Cisco UCM	Organization Name:	CiscoDev	e	
7 - Calendar Server	Username:	ctm account *	•	
8 - Database Backup Schedule	Password:		s	
	Polling Interval(minutes):	1 *	:	
	Certificate:	Browse	:	
	<ul> <li>Test Connection</li> <li>Host: the IBM Domino server host name or IP address.</li> <li>User Name/Password: user account that has read access to the Domino server.</li> </ul>			
	* = Required Fields			

## **Explanation of IBM Domino Fields**

• Host

Host is the hostname or IP address of the IBM Domino host.

Bind Method

The bind method indicates the desired level of security.

 Secure—Secure Socket Layer (SSL) connection requires the Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) Certificate for the IBM Domino server. You must complete the Certificate field on this window before you can proceed. - Normal—The CTS Manager communicates with the IBM Domino server in cleartext using HTTP.



If you selected Secure bind method, this value is required.

• Port

The default value is 80.

• Organization Name

This field requires a sequence of case-insensitive ASCII labels separated by dots (for example, "cisco.com")—defined for subtrees in the Internet Organization Name System and used in other Internet identifiers, such as hostnames, mailbox names, and URLs.

• Username

The username provides login access to the IBM Domino server.

• Password

The user password allows access to the IBM Domino server.

• Polling Interval (minutes)

This is the amount of time between intervals that the CTS-MAN will poll for Calendar information. The interval times for polling are from minimum of 1 to a maximum of 360 minutes.

• Certificate

A certificate is a digital representation of user or device attributes, including a public key, that is signed with an authoritative private key. In a self-signature, the signature can be verified using the public key contained in the certificate.

Note

Click the **Browse...** button to choose the IBM Domino server SSL certificate. If you selected Secure bind method, this value is required.

#### **Step 12** The Database Backup Schedule window opens.

Fill in the fields. If you are setting up a remote backup, click **Verify Remote Host** to verify the login information.



The default is set to a daily backup schedule with the backup information stored to the local drive. Cisco recommends that you back up your data to a different drive.

If at any time you encounter problems, go to Chapter 13, Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager to see how to correct the problem.





# Additional Installation Configurations for Cisco TelePresence Manager

Revised: June 11, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

# **Contents**

- Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN, page 9-2
- Introduction, page 9-3
- Security Settings, page 9-3
- Digital Security Certificates, page 9-4
  - Generating Security Certificate Reports, page 9-5
  - Viewing Security Certificates, page 9-5
  - Deleting Security Certificates, page 9-5
  - Uploading Security Certificates, page 9-5
- LDAP Server, page 9-6
- Field Mappings, page 9-8
- Password, page 9-12
- Calendar Server, page 9-12
- Microsoft Exchange, page 9-17
  - Re-sync Operations, page 9-19
- IBM Domino, page 9-20
- System Settings, page 9-23
- Database Status, Backup, and Restore, page 9-28
  - Settings, page 9-28
  - Changing the Backup Schedule, page 9-30
  - Backing Up Database Files, page 9-31
  - Viewing Backup History, page 9-32
  - To restore data from a backup:, page 9-34

- Discovery Service, page 9-34
- MCU Devices, page 9-35
- Access Management, page 9-37
- Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch (CTMS), page 9-38
- Cisco Unified Video Conferencing (CUVC), page 9-39
- Concierges, page 9-41
- Policy Management, page 9-44
- Remote Account, page 9-46
- System Configuration System Settings, page 9-47
- Application Settings, page 9-48
  - Interoperability with Video Conferencing Settings, page 9-48
  - Intercompany Setting, page 9-48
  - Meeting Notification Email Settings, page 9-49
- CTS-Manager Redundancy Failover Procedure, page 9-49

# **Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN**

The purpose of this guide is to outline the information you will need to reference in order to configure the system after installing the CTS-MAN.

The flow of tasks you need to do for additional configurations for the CTS-MAN are provided in the following table.

Set-Up Procedure Guidelines after Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location	
Additional Installation Procedures for CTS-MAN	The administrator makes use of the System Configuration window to perform system configuration tasks such as as synchronizing system databases, managing security, and reconfiguring system settings	Current chapter.	
Monitoring CTS Manager	Describes the support features available when you log into CTS-Manager using a Concierge role.	Chapter 10, "Monitoring Cisco TelePresence Manager"	

 Table 9-1
 Post-Install Guidelines for Configuring CTS-MAN

If at any time you encounter problems, go to Chapter 13, Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager to see how to correct the problem.

# Introduction

The administrator makes use of the System Configuration window to perform additional tasks such as:

- upgrading system software
- synchronizing system databases,
- managing security
- reconfiguring system settings.

Figure 9-1 shows the system configuration tasks.

Figure 9-1 Cisco Telepresence Manager System Configuration Window



# **Security Settings**

The Security Settings window assists with managing system security certificates and web services security.

### Figure 9-2 System Configuration Security Settings Window

Sy	System Configuration > Security Settings							
	Web	Services Secu	urity:			⊖ Seci	ire 🖲 Unsecure	Apply Reset
D	igita	al Security Co	ertificate	5	_	_	_	Apply Reset
	Cate	gory: All	*	Unit:	All 🗸			Filter
								Showing 1 - 2 of 2 records
			Unit		Category			Certificate Name 🔻
	D	CTM-trust			TRUST		tsbu-ctm23.pem	
	0	tomcat			OWN		tomcat.pem	
	Uplo	ad Dow	nload LSC					View Delete

## **Web Services Security**

You can turn on web services security by choosing Secure mode. For more information refer to the Cisco TelePresence Security Solution documentation on Cisco.com,

http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/telepresence/security\_solutions/security\_solutions.html

Caution

Cisco Unified CM and any CTMS registered with CTS-Manager must be configured and set to secure mode before downloading CAPF certs, LSCs, and setting CTS-Manager to secure mode. If secure mode is not established in this order, you may need to restart the CTI manager in Cisco Unified CM and restart CTS-Manager in order for secure mode to work properly.

# **Digital Security Certificates**

CTS-Manager supports the following security certificates:

• Tomcat—Security Keystore to store self-generated Apache Tomcat certificates.



CTS-Manager does not support replacing the default Tomcat certificate with any other certificate.

• CTM-trust—CTS-Manager Security Keystore to store digital certificates for Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino, Directory Server, and Cisco Unified CM.

## **Generating Security Certificate Reports**

You can generate a list of certificates containing a specific category and unit by supplying the following criteria:

- Choose All, Own, or Trust from the Category drop-down list.
- Choose All, CTM-trust, or Tomcat from the Unit menu.
- Click Filter to generate the list of certificates that match the search criteria.

### **Viewing Security Certificates**

To view the contents of a security certificate click the radio button next to the certificate unit name and click **View**.

The contents of the certificate can be copied and pasted in a text file.

### **Deleting Security Certificates**

To delete a CTM-trust type security certificate, click the radio button next to the certificate unit name and click **Delete**.



CAPF-LSCs and CAPF-trust certificates and tomcat cannot be deleted. To remove them, set Web Security to "Unsecure." Setting Web Security to unsecure triggers the deletion process.

### **Uploading Security Certificates**

To display the Certificate Upload window, from which you can copy a security certificate to Cisco TelePresence Manager, click **Upload**.

Caution

You cannot upload a certificate of the same name. You should delete the existing certificate before uploading a new one.

- **Step 1** In the Certificate Upload window, choose the category and unit for the certificate.
- Step 2 Click Browse to choose a location where a certificate file is located, and add it to the Certificate field.
- **Step 3** Click **Upload** to copy the file.
- **Step 4** Click **Close** to close the Certificate Upload window.

# **LDAP Server**

CTS-Manager uses Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) to retrieve information related to users and conference rooms from Directory Server deployments. Enterprises typically use specialized databases called *directories* to store information related to users, meeting rooms, and so on. LDAP is a protocol for accessing directories.

Note

CTS-Manager only supports English language-based Active Directory installations.

This window specifies LDAP Directory Server server settings that are used by CTS-Manager to access the directory information. Open the LDAP Server window to see the following choices:

- Settings for LDAP
- Field Mappings

# **Settings for LDAP**

The Settings window is where you make changes to the LDAP server after first-time installation.

System Configuration > LDAP Server			
Settings Field Mappings			
Service Status:	ОК		
Host:	tsbu-sr6		35
Bind Method:	○ Secure ④ Normal		
Port:	389		36
Default Context:	DC=srdev,DC=com	Fetch DNs	38
Username:	cn=administrator,cn=users	Append default context	38
Password:	••••••		38
Certificate:		Browse	
Connection Pool Size:	1		36
User Containers:	cn=users	Append default context	36
		Append default context	
* Required Fields			Test Connection Apply Reset

### Figure 9-3 LDAP Window Settings Tab

## **Multiple LDAP Peer Domains**

If you have a LDAP peer domain configured you'll need to specify the additional user containers and context. You can do this with one of the User Container fields. For example, cn=users,dc=domain2,dc=com

When specifying the container and context information for your peer domain, DO NOT check the Append default context box.

- Step 1 To test the connection between this system and the LDAP server, click Test Connection.
- **Step 2** To register new or modified settings, click **Apply.**
- **Step 3** To restore the original settings, click **Reset**



LDAP containers configured for use with CTS-Manager should not be specified in such a way where one container is the child of the other. This requirement includes specifying the default context.

Table 9-2 describes the settings for the LDAP Server window.

Field or Button	Description or Settings	
Service Status	Display-only status of the service.	
Host	LDAP server host name.	
ind Method Click the <b>Secure</b> or <b>Normal</b> radio button to select t method:		
	• Secure—Secure SSL connection requires the Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) Certificate for the LDAP server.	
	• Normal—CTS-Manager communicates with the Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino server in cleartext using HTTP.	
Port	The default port for secure connection is 636.	
	The default port for normal connection in a single LDAP server deployment is 389.	
	In cases where deployments consist of multiple LDAP Directory Servers, this port should be configured with 3268, which is the Global Catalog port.	
	Secure Global Catalog port is 3269.	
Default Context	The default context from which the LDAP queries are performed.	
	To change the context string:	
	• Click the Fetch DNs button and choose the context from the Fetch DNs drop-down list adjacent to this field.	

Table 9-2LDAP Server Settings

Field or Button	Description or Settings	
Username	The username used to authenticate to the LDAP server. This must be in the LDAP fully qualified domain name (FQDN) format. Example: cn=administrator,cn=users,dc= <mydomain>,dc=com)</mydomain>	
Password	Password to access the LDAP server.	
Certificate	The name of the LDAP certificate. This is only needed if you have chosen the Secure Bind Method.	
Connection pool size	The number of concurrent connections used by the Cisco TelePresence Manager server to retrieve data from the LDAP server. This is primarily used for optimizing the server's access to the LDAP server.	
User containers	The containers from which queries are performed to retrieve user objects. More than one user container or user object can be specified. The Cisco Telepresence server uses the values entered to search through the containers in sequence to retrieve user and meeting room information from the Directory Server. Additionally, these containers are used to retrieve user information for authentication.	
	• To append the default context, check the Append default context box next to the user container field.	
	<ul> <li>Note If you have a LDAP peer domain configured you'll need to specify any user containers and context. For example, "cn=users,dc=domain2,dc=com".</li> <li>When specifying the container and context information for your peer domain, DO NOT check the Append default context box.</li> </ul>	

### Table 9-2 LDAP Server Settings (continued)

# **Field Mappings**

The CTS-Manager server uses application objects and attributes that are internally mapped to the objects and attributes in the LDAP Directory Server. Most of these mappings are predefined and fixed. However, some of the information required for the Cisco TelePresence system may be stored in different attributes of the LDAP Directory Server, based on the enterprise deployment. The Field Mapping window provides a mechanism to map such objects and attributes used by the CTS-Manager server to the object and attributes defined in the LDAP Directory Server schema.

## **Microsoft Exchange Deployments**

The attributes are used by the Exchange server to store the user's e-mail and display name information. For most of the Exchange deployments, this information should not be changed.

CTS-Manager supports connection to multiple LDAP domains/servers that belong to a single Active Directory forest. Some of the setups with which CTS-Manager can work are peer-peer LDAP domain setup, and Parent-Child LDAP domain setup.



The object and attribute mappings for Exchange/Directory Server deployments are listed in Table 9-3 and cannot be changed after installing and configuring Cisco TelePresence Manager. Cisco TelePresence Manager may not functions properly if the Object Class fields are changed.

#### Figure 9-4 LDAP Window Field Mappings Tab

System Configuration > LDAP Server					
Settings Field Mapping	Settings Field Mappings				
_					
Person					
	Object Class		Attribute		
SchedulerName:	Person	]	proxyaddresses		
EmailID:	Person	]	proxyaddresses	]	
DisplayName:	Person	]	displayname	]	
□ EnterpriseConfRoom					
	Object Class		Attribute		
EmailID:	Person	]	proxyaddresses	]	
DisplayName:	Person	]	displayname	]	
				View Sample Data	

### **Verifying Field Mapping Data**

Verify that the data retrieved is as you expected. If data is incorrect, the application will not operate correctly.

Click View Sample Data to retrieve objects based on the mappings specified.



Setting the LDAP objects and attributes used by the Exchange server requires experience using Directory Server and Exchange software. **Do not change the** *proxyAddresses* value in the LDAP SchedulerName Attribute field.

The majority of deployments do not require any changes to these attributes. Incorrectly changing these fields will result in Cisco TelePresence Manager not being able to function.

Consult the Cisco TelePresence Manager support team and the LDAP and Exchange server administrator for your deployment before changing the default mappings in these screens.

Table 9-3 describes the settings for this window

Application Object	Application Attribute	LDAP Object Class	LDAP Attribute	
Person				
	SchedulerName	Person	proxyaddresses	
			Note Do not change this value. If this value is changed incorrectly, meetings will not have the correct information.	
	EmailID	Person	proxyAddresses	
	DisplayName	Person	displayname	
EnterpriseConfRoon	n	<b>I</b>	L	
	EmailID	Person	proxyAddresses	
	DisplayName	Person	displayname	

Table 9-3	LDAP Objects and Attributes
-----------	-----------------------------

## **IBM Domino Deployment s**

These attributes are used by the Domino LDAP server to retrieve the user's e-mail and display name information. For most of the Domino deployments, this information should not be changed.

CTS-Manager supports a Domino deployment with a single domain. CTS Manager can be configured against one Domino server only. In a cluster environment, all resource reservation databases that contain a Cisco TelePresence room's reservations must be replicated to the Domino server that CTS-Manager is configured against. Users in Directory Assistance database configured with external LDAP servers are not supported.

∕!∖ Caution

The object and attribute mappings for Domino/Directory Server deployments are listed in Table 9-4 and cannot be changed after installing and configuring CTS-Manager.

### Figure 9-5 LDAP Window Field Mappings Tab

System Configuration > LDAP Server				
Settings Field Mappings				
_				
Person				
	Object Class		Attribute	
SchedulerName:	Person	]	cn	]
EmailID:	Person	]	cn	
DisplayName:	Person	]	cn	]
				View Sample Data

Table 9-4 LDAP Objects and Attributes

Application Object	Application Attribute	LDAP Object Class	LDAP Attribute
Person			
	SchedulerName	Person	cn
			Note Do not change this value. If this value is changed incorrectly, meetings will not have the correct information.
	EmailID	Person	cn
	DisplayName	Person	cn

### **Verifying Field Mapping Data**

Verify that the data retrieved is as you expected. If data is incorrect, the application will not operate correctly.

Click View Sample Data to retrieve objects based on the mappings specified.

/!\ Caution

The Object Class field and the LDAP Attribute field do not need to be changed. Cisco TelePresence Manager may not function properly if the Object Class fields and LDAP Attribute fields are changed.



Setting the LDAP objects and attributes used by the Domino server requires experience using Directory Server and Domino software. Do not change the *cn* value in the LDAP SchedulerName Attribute field. The majority of deployments do not require any changes to these attributes. Incorrectly changing these

fields will result in Cisco TelePresence Manager not being able to function. Consult the Cisco TelePresence Manager support team and the LDAP and Domino server administrator for your deployment before changing the default mappings in these screens.

# Password

Use the System Settings window to change the password for the Cisco TelePresence Manager. You must know the current password. Input the new password the second time for verification.Do not use anything other than English, as International words or characters are not supported in this release.

Figure 9-6 System Configuration - System Settings Window Password Tab

System Configuration > System Settings			
IP Settings NTP Settings	SNMP Settings Remote Account	Password System	
Username:	admin		
Current Password:		80	
New Password:		31:	
New Password (verify):		81	
		Apply Reset	

- **Step 1** To display the password fields, click on the tab, **Password**.
- **Step 2** Type in your current password.
- **Step 3** Then, to change password, go to **New Password** field and type your new password, using only English characters.
- Step 4 In the New Password (verify) field, repeat your new password to verify it.
- Step 5 To register the new password, click Apply.
- **Step 6** To restore to the original password, click **Reset**.



Make sure you keep your password secure and that it follows standard password guidelines, minimum 6 letters.

## **Calendar Server**

If you did not specify a Calendar server (either Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino) during the initial installation, the Calendar Server window displays the Calendar Server wizard.

The Calendar Server wizard leads you through a four-step process to register a Calendar server with CTS-Manager.



The LDAP server you specified during initial installation determines if you will be able to sync any Cisco TelePresence endpoints with the Calendar server you are registering. The LDAP server you are using must match the Calendar server you are registering.

The No Calendar Server window displays the **Configure Now** button to initiate the Calendar Server wizard.

### Figure 9-7 Configure Calendar Server

Configure the Calendar server (MS Exchange or IBM Domino)to be supported by the Cisco TelePresence Manager:
Configure Now..

**Step 1** The first step in registering a Calendar server with CTS-Manager is to choose either IBM Domino or Microsoft Exchange.

🗿 tsbu-ctm29 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog		
<ul> <li>Isbu-ctm29 - Cisco TelePresence Manager W</li> <li>Cisco TelePresence Manager</li> <li>1 - Calendar Server Selection</li> <li>2 - Calendar Server</li> <li>3 - Confirmation</li> </ul>	Calendar Server         Select the email server to go to next step.         Microsoft Exchange         IBM Domino         None	
	Selection of Calendar server will display corresponding server set up screen in a coming step. If none is selected ,the Calendar Server configuration step will be skipped.	

### Figure 9-8 Cisco TelePresence Manager - Calendar Server Selection Screen

**Step 2** In the next step you need to specify the service logon information. The example below displays the information needed to use the Microsoft Exchange service.

Isbu-ctm29 - Cisco TelePresence &	Aanager Webpag	e Dialog	<u></u>
Cisco TelePresence Manager	Microsoft Exchange Enter Microsoft Exchange resource properties. Connection to the Microsoft Exchange server must be tested and verified before you can advance to the next step.		
<ul> <li>1 - Calendar Server Selection</li> <li>2 - Calendar Server</li> <li>3 - Confirmation</li> </ul>	Host: Bind Method: Port: Domain Name: Logon Name: SMTP LHS: Password: Certificate:	<ul> <li>Secure ● Normal</li> <li>80</li> <li>*</li> <li></li></ul>	101
		Test Connection < Back Next > Canc	el

### Figure 9-9 Cisco TelePresence Manager - Calendar Server MicroSoft Exchange Screen

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the new Calendar server settings.

atsbu-ctm29 - Cisco TelePresence /	Manager Webpage Dialog 🛛 🔀
Software Upgrade	Confirmation
	Click apply to save the settings
1 - Calendar Server Selection	
2 - Calendar Server	
3 - Confirmation	
	<b>Example</b> (Apply) Cancel

Figure 9-10 Cisco TelePresence Manager - Calendar Confirmation Screen

**Step 4** Then click **OK** to restart the CTS-Manager server.

### Figure 9-11 Apply Changes Screen

Window	s Internet Explorer 🛛 🔀
?	The UI will be restarted automatically for the changes to take effect. Are you sure you want to apply the changes?
	OK Cancel

Step 5 Once the server has restarted, click Continue to re-launch the CTS-Manager server and log in.

### Figure 9-12 System Restart Notification Screen

The system is finishing up your request. It might be several minutes before the system is ready again. You will be allowed to continue onto the login screen once the system becomes available. Please wait.

<u>//</u> Caution

L

If the Calendar service you are registering with does not match the LDAP server you specified during initial installation, the wizard will display all the Cisco TelePresence endpoints that will not sync with the new Calendar service. You can proceed with the Calendar service you have chosen, but meeting organizers will not be able to use the endpoints to schedule meetings.

## **Microsoft Exchange**

The Microsoft Exchange window helps you manage the database that stores meeting information. To test the connection between this system and the Microsoft Exchange server as shown in Figure 9-13:

Step 1	Click Test Connection.
Step 2	To register new or modified settings, click Apply.
Step 3	To restore the original settings, click <b>Reset</b> .



CTS-Manager only supports Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007, Enterprise Edition.

Figure 9-13	Microsoft Exchange Calendar Service	Window
-------------	-------------------------------------	--------

Service Status:	ОК				
4ailbox Usage:	43.77% full (	17508.0 of 40000.0	KB is used)		
lost:	tsbu-sr6		342		
Bind Method: O Secure		Normal			
Port:	80		:#:		
Domain Name:	srdev.com		342		
.ogon Name:	SuperUser				
MTP LHS:	SuperUser		342		
assword:	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• *		
Certificate:			Browse		
lumber of Meetings Per Query:	100		2 2		
	_	_			
nchronization Operations	~	Room:		Filter	Showing 1 - 4 of 4 rec
ubscription Status:	×		nchronization Time (+)	Filter	-
All           All           Room Name ▼           TelepresenceRoom34	×	Last Sy	nchronization Time (+) 2/08/2008 12:00 AM	Filter	-
Importation Contractions         All         Importation Status:         All         Importation Status:         All         Importation Status:         All         Importation Status:         Importation Status: <td></td> <td>Last Sy ✓1 ✓1</td> <td>Inchronization Time (+) 2/08/2008 12:00 AM 2/08/2008 12:00 AM</td> <td>Filter</td> <td>Subscription Status Success Success</td>		Last Sy ✓1 ✓1	Inchronization Time (+) 2/08/2008 12:00 AM 2/08/2008 12:00 AM	Filter	Subscription Status Success Success
Room Name ▼       TelepresenceRoom34       TelepresenceRoom32       TelepresenceRoom31		Last Sy ✓1 ✓1 ✓1	enchronization Time (+) 2/08/2008 12:00 AM 2/08/2008 12:00 AM 2/08/2008 12:00 AM	Filter	Success Success
All All Room Name  TelepresenceRoom32		Last Sy ✓1 ✓1 ✓1	Inchronization Time (+) 2/08/2008 12:00 AM 2/08/2008 12:00 AM	Filter	Subscription Status Success Success

Table 9-5 describes the information and operations accessible from this window.

Field	Description or Settings
Service status	Display-only status report of system service.
Mailbox Usage	Meeting information is mailed to users. This display-only field reports the amount of storage space taken up by the e-mails as a percentage of total space available.
Host	Hostname provided for the Microsoft Exchange server account, which can be modified.

Description of Continue

Field	Description or Settings			
Bind Method	Choose the <b>Secure</b> or <b>Normal</b> radio button to select the binding method, as follows:			
	• Secure—CTS-Manager communicates with the Microsoft Exchange server in secure mode using HTTPS. This method requires enabling Secure Socket Layer (SSL). on the Microsoft Exchange server.			
	• Normal—CTS-Manager communicates with the Microsoft Exchange server in cleartext using HTTP.			
Port	Communication port number.			
Domain Name	Domain name provided for the Microsoft Exchange server account, which can be changed.			
	Note This is the email domain name.			
Logon Name	This is the account name used to log on to the Microsoft Exchange server. The value is dependent on the AD/Exchange configuration. For example, it is either ctsappaccount@mycompany.com or ctsappaccount.			
SMTP LHS	This is the left hand side (LHS) of the SMTP address for the account specified by the Logon Name. If the full SMTP address is ctsappsmtp@mycompany.com enter ctsappsmtp in this field.			
Password	Password used to access the Microsoft Exchange server account, which can be changed.			
Certificate	Use the field to provide a trust certificate for new Microsoft Exchange server.			
Number of Meetings Per Query	The maximum number of meetings that Cisco TelePresence Manager can retrieve from the Exchange server for each query.			

Table 9-5	Microsoft Exchange	Server (continued)
-----------	--------------------	--------------------

Fig. 1.4

## **Re-sync Operations**

The Re-sync Operations area tells you when information in the Microsoft Exchange server database was last updated with meetings scheduled for a particular room.

When mismatched information in the databases causes meeting conflicts or there are other problems that prevent a meeting from being launched successfully, this area of the Microsoft Exchange window allows you to synchronize information between Microsoft Exchange and the CTS-Manager database. Synchronization takes time and system resources to accomplish and should be done only when necessary.

To synchronize information between Microsoft Exchange and the CTS-Manager database:

- **Step 1** Check the boxes next to the rooms to select them. To synchronize information for all meeting rooms, check the box next to **Room Name** in the display header.
- Step 2 Click **Re-sync** to start the operation.

Once you've begun the Re-sync operation the Service Status field displays a **Sync progress** indicator showing the progress of the Re-sync operation by percentage.

**Step 3** Once the synchronization operation completes, click **Refresh** to update the display.

Table 9-6 describes the information displayed in this area of the Microsoft Exchange window.



A maximum of 100 rooms are displayed per page. If you have more than 100 rooms registered with Cisco TelePresence Manager you can click the Next button to display the additional rooms.

### Table 9-6 Microsoft Exchange Server Synchronization Report

Field	Description
Room Name	Name of the meeting room. Click the arrow in the header of the Room Name column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.
Last Synchronization Time	Time the synchronization operation was started.
Subscription Status	Status of the synchronization operation. Click the arrow in the header of the Room Name column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.

# **IBM** Domino

The IBM Domino window helps you manage the database that stores TelePresence meeting information. To test the connection between this system and the Domino server, as shown in Figure 9-14

Step 1	Click Test Connection.
Step 2	To register new or modified settings, click Apply.
Step 3	To restore the original settings, click <b>Reset</b> .

### Figure 9-14 IBM Domino Calendar Service Window

Service Status:	ок		
Mailbox Usage:	Unable to obtain necessa	ry information	
Host:	tsbu-ctmpc13	292	
Bind Method:	🔿 Secure 💿 Normal		
Port:	80	292	
Organization Name:	CiscoDev	292	
Username:	ctm account	292	
Password:	••••••	******	
Polling Interval (minutes):	1	202	
Certificate:		Browse	
Required Fields			Test Connection Apply Re
ynchronization Operati	All Room:		Filter
ynchronization Operati ubscription Status:	All Room:		Showing 1 - 1 of 1 rec
ynchronization Operati Subscription Status: Domino Databases 🔻	All  Room: Last Synchronization Time (+)	Resynchronization Status	Showing 1 - 1 of 1 rec Associated Rooms
ynchronization Operati ubscription Status:	All Room:	Resynchronization Status Success	Showing 1 - 1 of 1 rec

Table 9-7 describes the information and operations accessible from this window.

### Table 9-7IBM Domino Server

Field or Button	Description or Settings
Service status	Display-only status report of system service.
Mailbox Usage	Meeting information is mailed to users. This display-only field reports the amount of storage space taken up by the emails as a percentage of total space available.
Host	Hostname provided for the Domino server account, which can be modified.

Field or Button	Description or Settings	
Bind Method	Choose the Secure or Normal radio button to select the binding method, as follows:	
	• Secure—CTS-Manager communicates with the Domino server in secure mode using HTTPS. This method requires enabling Secure Socket Layer (SSL). on the Domino server.	
	• Normal—CTS-Manager communicates with the Domino server in cleartext using HTTP.	
Port	Communication port number.	
Organization Name	Domain name provided for the Domino server account, which can be changed.	
Username	This is the account name used to log on to the Domino server.	
Password	Password used to access the Domino server account, which can be changed.	
	<b>Note</b> Make sure the Internet password is used in the Password fields in the System Configuration> IBM Domino window and the LDAP Server window.	
Polling Interval (minutes)	Specifies the time interval, in minutes from 1 to 360, to poll the Domino server for meeting information.	
Certificate	Use the field to provide an IBM Domino trust certificate class file.	
	<b>Note</b> A certificate is required in secure mode only.	

### Table 9-7 IBM Domino Server (continued)

## **Re-sync Operations**

The Re-sync Operations area tells you when information in the Domino server database was last updated with meetings scheduled for a particular room.

When mismatched information in the databases causes meeting conflicts or there are other problems that prevent a meeting from being launched successfully, this area of the IBM Domino window allows you to synchronize information between Domino and the CTS-Manager database. Synchronization takes time and system resources to accomplish and should be done only when necessary.

To synchronize information between Domino and the CTS-Manager database:

Once you've begun the Re-sync operation the Service Status field displays a Sync progress indicator showing the progress of the Re-sync operation by percentage.

Step 2 Once the synchronization operation completes, click Refresh to update the display.

Table 9-8 describes the information displayed in this area of the IBM Domino window.

Table 9-8 IBM Domino Server Synchronization Report

Field	Description
	Name of the meeting room. Click the arrow in the header of the Room Name column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.
Last Synchronization Time	Time the synchronization operation was started.

Field	Description	
Resynchronization Status	Status of the synchronization operation.	
Associated Rooms		

Table 9-8	IBM Domino Server Synchronization Report
-----------	--

# **System Settings**

If you are the system administrator and know the superuser password, you can open the System Settings window to see the following choices:

- IP Setting
- NTP Setting
- SNMP Setting
- Remote Account
- Password
- System Configuration System Settings

Use the tabs in this window to modify IP settings, configure a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server, enable or disable Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), set up a temporary account for access, change the system password, and restart the system.

# **IP Setting**

The IP Setting window lists information that is provided to CTS-Manager during first-time installation and configuration. Although it is typically not necessary to change IP settings, this window offers a place to modify some of them. Figure 9-15 describes the fields and buttons.

### Figure 9-15 System Settings Window IP Settings Tab

P Settings NTP Settin	gs SNMP Settings Remote Account Password System
MAC Address:	00:1a:4b:33:2f:ec
Hostname:	tsbu-ctm18
Domain Name:	cisco.com
Primary DNS:	171.70.168.183
Secondary DNS:	
Ethernet Card:	eth0
DHCP:	○ Enable ④ Disable
IP Address:	172.28.68.165 *
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0 *
Default Gateway:	172.28.68.1 *

To add new information, type it in the fields provided.

To change information, highlight and delete existing information and type in the new information.

To register new or modified settings, click Apply.

To restore the original settings, click Reset.

Table 9-9 describes the information displayed in this area of the IP Settings window

### Table 9-9IP Settings

Field or Button	Description or Settings	
MAC Address	Display-only MAC address number supplied for this Cisco TelePresence Manager.	
Hostname	Display-only hostname configured for this Cisco TelePresence Manager.	
Domain Name	Domain name for this Cisco TelePresence Manager.	
Primary DNS	Primary DNS server IP address supplied for this Cisco TelePresence Manager.	
Secondary DNS	Secondary DNS server IP address supplied for this Cisco TelePresence Manager.	
Ethernet Card	Name supplied for the system Ethernet card.	
DHCP	Enable and Disable radio buttons determine whether DHCP is enabled or disabled. When the Enable radio button is chosen, information in the IP address fields cannot be modified.	
	NoteTo modify the IP settings for this Cisco TelePresence Manager, click the Disable radio button.	

Field or Button	Description or Settings	
IP Address	IP address supplied for this Cisco TelePresence Manager.	
Subnet Mask	Subnet mask used on the IP address.	
Default Gateway	Default gateway IP address supplied for this Cisco TelePresence Manager.	

Table 9-9	IP Settings (continued)
-----------	-------------------------

# **NTP Setting**

Click the NTP Setting tab in the System Settings window to list the configured IP address of the Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers.

NTP is used to synchronize the clocks on Cisco IP telephony servers with an external network time server that uses NTP.



System Configuration > System Settings			
IP Settings NTP Settings	SNMP Settings Remote Account Password System		
NTP Server 1:	64.104.222.16		
NTP Server 2:	64.104.193.12		
NTP Server 3:			
NTP Server 4:			
NTP Server 5:			
	Apply Reset		

Step 1	To add an NTP server to the configuration, type the IP address in an NTP Server field.	
Step 2	To change an NTP server in the configuration, highlight and delete the IP address in the NTP Server field and type in the new address.	
Step 3	To register new or modified settings, click Apply.	
Step 4	To restore the original settings, click <b>Reset</b> .	

# **SNMP** Setting

SNMP is an industry-standard interface used by network management systems to capture system status and error information, including information provided by Unified CM. Use this window to enable and disable SNMP service and change the default configuration.

By default, SNMP service is disabled. Once SNMP is enabled, the following default SNMP settings are also enabled:



Editing SNMP settings from the CTS-Manager UI may cause some discrepancies. Please use the CLI commands to change these settings.

- One SNMP username set to "admin." This name cannot be changed.
- SNMP service password set to "snmppassword." The password should be changed.
- No trap receiver configured. Use the Trap Receiver Configuration fields in this window to configure a trap receiver. The fields collect trap receiver username, password, authentication algorithm, hostname or IP address, and port.

Figure 9-17 System Settings Window SNMP Settings Tab

System Configuration > System Settings			
IP Settings NTP Settings SNMP Settings Remote Account Password System			
Engine ID:	0x80001f8803001a4b332fec		
SNMP:	○ Enable ④ Disable		
Configuration:	Configuration:		
Username:	admin	Change	
Current Password:			
Trap Receiver Configuration:	🔿 Yes 💿 No		
Username:		Change	
Current Password:			
Authentication Algorithm:	MD5 🗸		
Host:		a:	
Port:		8:	
		Apply Reset	

- **Step 1** To configure SNMP, click the **SNMP Setting** tab in the System Settings window.
- **Step 2** To register new or modified settings, click **Apply.**
- **Step 3** To restore the original settings, click **Reset**.

Table 9-10 describes the fields and buttons for SNMP settings.

Field or Button	Description or Settings	
Engine ID	The engine ID for the SNMP agent on this CTS-Manager.	
	If you configure the trap receiver, this engine ID is used to create a trap user on the trap receiver system and to compute the security digest for authenticating and encrypting packets sent to a user on the remote host.	
SNMP	To enable or disable SNMP, click the <b>Enable</b> or <b>Disable</b> radio button, as appropriate.	
	When SNMP is enabled, supply a password for the SNMP server in the <b>Configuration</b> area.	
Configuration		
Username	SNMP server username.	
Current Password	SNMP server password. The password must be 8 characters long. Enter it twice for verification.	
Trap Receiver Configuration	To select whether to use an SNMP trap receiver, click the <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> radio button, as appropriate.	
	When a trap receiver is used, supply login information for the trap receiver in the following fields.	
Username	Trap receiver username.	
Current Password	Trap receiver password. The password must be 8 characters long. Enter it twice for verification.	
Authentication Algorithm	Choose Message Digest 5 (MD5) or Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) for authentication.	
Host	Trap receiver IP address or hostname.	
Port	Trap receiver port number.	

Table 9-10	SNMP Settings
------------	---------------

### **Technical Notes**

CTS-Manager supports SNMP v3 and v2c. Together it supports ten SNMP users and five trap destination/receivers. A string of trap receiver settings is added to the */etc/snmp/snmpd.conf* file to configure the trap receiver on the Cisco TelePresence Manager server. The string must include the following information, which is collected in the fields described in Table 9-10 or is set by default:

- IP address and port number of the trap receiver
- Trap receiver username
- Trap receiver user password
- Trap sender engine ID
- Authentication method, either MD5 for Message Digest 5 or SHA for Secure Hash Algorithm
- Security model, which by default is *authNoPriv*
- SNMP version, which by default is version 3
- Included MIBs, which by default is ALL.

The following is an example trap receiver entry:

trapsess -e 0x80001f880474657374 -v 3 -m ALL -l authNoPriv -u traper -a MD5 -A changeme 171.71.232.113:162

These fields can be viewed and configured using **get** and **set** commands on the */usr/sbin/snmpconfig* script. To test your configuration, run **snmptrapd come** with **net-snmp** on the trap receiver system. You can create the user in */etc/snmp/snmptrapd.conf* on the trap receiver system before starting **snmptrapd**.

## **Database - Status, Backup, and Restore**

CTS-Manager uses an Informix database server to store information. The Database window allows the Administrator to view the database status and run backup and restore operations. Open the Database window to see the following choices:

- Settings
- Backup
- Restore

## **Settings**

The Settings window allows you to manage the size and age of meeting information in the Informix database. To register new settings, click **Apply**. To return to the original settings, click **Reset**.

Figure 9-18 Database Window Settings Tab

System Configuration > Database		
Settings Backup Restore		
Service Status:	ок	
Current Database Size:	0.03% full (4.97 of 14648.44 MB is used)	
Automatically Purge Data Older Than (months):	* +	
* Required Fields	Apply Reset	

(+) The system automatically purges data when database utilization exceeds 75% of the allocated disk space.

Table 9-11 describes the information and settings that are accessible from the Database window Settings tab.
Field	Description or Settings		
Service Status	Display-only status report of the Informix database server.		
Current Database Size	Display-only report showing the size of the database as a percentage of the amount of total space available for a Cisco TelePresence Manager account in Directory Server. The number displayed should not exceed 75%.		
Automatically purge data older than	Sets the number of months of storage for the information in the database.		
(months)	Data older than the specified number of months is purged.		
	The purge cutoff date for this setting should be selected by balancing the number of months of data retention against the size of the database required to store the data created during that period. The default setting of 1 month is considered a reasonable midpoint.		
	<b>Note</b> Database utilization cannot exceed 75% of the allocated disk space, and takes precedence. If the number of months you have specified exceeds this percentage, older data is purged so as not to exceed 75%.		

### Table 9-11 Database Settings

## Backup

Choose the Backup tab to display fields and settings that will assist you in scheduling backups of the database. It is important to keep the backup current in case you need to activate the backup CTS-MAN system.

### Figure 9-19 System Configuration - Database Window Backup Tab

System Configuration > Database				
Settings Backup Restor	•			
Schedule (+):		Daily	@ 23:00	Change
Number of backup files to	keep:	14	~	
Backup Type:		⊙ L	.ocal 🔘 Rem	ote
Backup Mode:		) s	ftp 🔿 Ftp	
Remote Storage Host :				H:
Port:		22		#:
Username:				#
Password:				#
Storage Path:				*
Backup History				Showing 1 - 10 of 14 records
Time stamp (+) 🔻	Status	Туре	Hostname	Location
12/07/2008 11:00 PM	ок	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-12-08-07-00-00.tar.gz
12/06/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-12-07-07-00-00.tar.gz
12/05/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-12-06-07-00-00.tar.gz
12/04/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-12-05-07-00-00.tar.gz
12/03/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-12-04-07-00-00.tar.gz
12/02/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-12-03-07-00-00.tar.gz
12/01/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-12-02-07-00-00.tar.gz
11/30/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-12-01-07-00-00.tar.gz
11/29/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-11-30-07-00-00.tar.gz
11/28/2008 11:00 PM	OK	Local		/common/dbbackup/CTMbackup.file.1.5.0.0.2008-11-29-07-00-00.tar.gz
First < Previous	Next > La	ist Ro	ows Per Page:	10 V Refresh

(+) All times are shown in time zone America/Los\_Angeles null

### **Changing the Backup Schedule**

The backup schedule currently set is displayed in the Backup window.

To change the backup schedule:

Step 1	Click Change.
Step 2	Choose the starting time from the Start Time drop-down list. This sets the backup time in your local timezone.
Step 3	Choose the frequency of the backups by clicking the <b>Daily</b> or <b>Weekly</b> radio button.
	<b>Note</b> If you click <b>Weekly</b> , check the box for the day of the week on which the backup should occur.

Step 4 Click OK to register your settings, or Cancel to restore the original settings

<u>Note</u>

Backup schedules are now displayed in your local timezone.

### **Backing Up Database Files**

Data backups are performed on the Active partition. If you switch partitions after performing a backup you'll need to perform another backup for the new Active partition.

To register new or modified settings, click Apply. To restore the original settings, click Reset.

To back up files in the database:

**Step 1** From the drop-down list, choose the number of backup files to keep. If you choose 3, the last three backup files will be kept, but earlier backup files will be purged.



**e** If you are creating remote backups the number of backup files is not affected. CTS-Manager only keeps track of the number of backups made locally.

- **Step 2** Choose the type of backup by clicking the **Local** or **Remote** radio button.
- **Step 3** Test your connection to a remote host by clicking **Verify Remote Host**.
- **Step 4** Click **backup Now** to begin the operation.

### **Remote Storage Host Fields**

A remote backup uses Secure FTP (SFTP) or FTP to store files remotely. If you choose to backup or restore using FTP, you do not need to supply a port number.



FTP scripts for Upgrade, Backup and Restore use Expect scripts and perform on a best-effort basis, due to potential variations in the responses sent by the FTP server. Only username/password-based login is supported. Anonymous login is not supported.
Secure FTP (SFTP) is the recommended mode of transferring files over the network.

You must fill in the following fields to gain access permissions to a remote host:

Field	Description
Remote Storage Host	Pathname of the remote host.
Port	Port to access the remote host. The default is port 22 for SFTP.
Username	Login name for the remote server.
Password	Password to access the remote server.
Storage Path	The full pathname where you want to store the backup files.

Table 9-12Remote Storage Host Fields

#### **Viewing Backup History**

The Database window Backup tab provides a history of database backups.

Table 9-13 describes the Backup History and Restore History fields.

 Table 9-13
 Backup History and Restore History Fields

Field	Description		
Timestamp	Date and time of backup. Click the arrow in the header of the Timestamp column to sort the list in ascending or descending order.		
Status     Status of the backup.			
Туре	Type of backup, either local or remote.		
Hostname	Name of host for the backup files.		
Location	Pathname where the files are stored.		

### **Restore**

The Restore tab displays the history of the database restore operations. See Table 9-13 for a description of the fields.

#### Figure 9-20 Database Window Restore Tab

estore Mode: ● Sftp ● Ftp Remote Storage Host :	lestore Type:	⊙ Lo	cal 🔿 Network		
Port:       22       *         Username:       *         Password:       *         Storage Path:       *         equired Fields       Available Backups       Verify Remote Host         store History       Showing 0 - 0 of 0 recommended	estore Mode;	Sftp	D C Ftp		
Usemame: Password: Storage Path: equired Fields Store History Showing 0 - 0 of 0 recently and a store of 0 recently and 0 - 0 of 0 - 0 - 0 - 0 - 0 - 0 - 0 - 0 - 0 - 0	Remote Storage Host :			de:	
Password: * Storage Path: * equired Fields Verify Remote Host store History Showing 0 - 0 of 0 rece	Port:	22		d:	
Storage Path:       *         equired Fields       Available Backups       Verify Remote Host         store History       Showing 0 - 0 of 0 recommended	Username:			d:	
equired Fields Available Backups Verify Remote Host store History Showing 0 - 0 of 0 rec	Password:			di:	
store History Showing 0 - 0 of 0 rea	Storage Path:			de:	
Showing 0 - 0 of 0 rea	equired Fields			Available Backups	Verify Remote Hos
		Status	Type	Hostname	
		Status	Туре	Hostname	
		Status	Туре	Hostname	
		Status	Туре	Hostname	
		Status	Туре	Hostname	
		Status	Туре	Hostname	
		Status	Туре	Hostname	
		Status	Туре	Hostname	

### **Restoring Backup Data**

When you restore data from a backup file, all changes made to the database since the backup will be lost. These changes must be added by the Exchange Sync Up and Discovery functions of the Cisco TelePresence Manager server. The database Restore function should be run only as a last resort; for example, when the database is corrupted or the disk fails and has to be replaced.

The restore operation will stop the Informix database server, so some CTS-Manager operations might be impacted during the operation. While the restore operation is in progress, all other processes are stopped. The user interface will only display progress of the restore operation. When the restore operation is complete, the Cisco Telepresence Manager is automatically restarted and the login page is displayed. You will have to login to resume use of the Cisco Telepresence Manager application.



You cannot restore the database from previous versions of CTS-Manager.

#### To restore data from a backup:

Clicking **Restore Now** displays a window listing all the backups stored locally and remotely. If you want to restore from a backup stored remotely you must first click the Network Restore Type radio button. Then choose either the SFTP or FTP Restore Mode and enter required information to access the remote host. See Table 9-12 for a description of the Remote Storage Host fields.

- **Step 1** Click the **Refresh** button to view the list of backups.
- **Step 2** Click the radio button next to the backup filename that is to be used for the restore operation.

Step 3 Click Restore Now. This action initiates a full restore of the database from the backup file.

## **Discovery Service**

To display and modify settings that associate CTS-Manager with Unified CM, choose Discovery Service in System Configuration.

To test the connection between Cisco TelePresence Manager and Cisco Unified Communications Manager, click **Test Connection**.

To manually start the process that is periodically performed to discover new rooms added to Unified CM, click **Discover Rooms**.



This process consumes a large amount of system processor time. System operation will be noticeably slower from the time that the Discover Rooms button has been clicked until the process is completed.

To register new or modified settings, click Apply. To restore the original settings, click Reset.

#### Figure 9-21 Discovery Service Window

System Configuration	> Discovery Service	
Service Status:	ОК	
Unified CM:		
Host:	tsbu-ctm23	*
Username:	ffdxuser	8
Password:	•••••	*
Certificate:	В	rowse
* Required Fields		Test Connection Discover Rooms Apply Reset

Table 9-14 describes fields, buttons, and settings.

Field	Description or Settings
Service Status	Display-only status report of system services.
	<b>Note</b> You may see a progress indicator in the status field, especially if many Cisco TelePresence meeting rooms are being managed by CTS-Manager. Each time this page is accessed, the status is updated, and the progress indicator will be seen while the system is discovering meeting rooms.
Host	Name of the Cisco Unified CM server host.
Username	Username for login to the Cisco Unified CM server.
Password	Password to access the Cisco Unified CM server.
Certificate	Use the field to provide a trust certificate for new Cisco Unified CM server.

#### Table 9-14 Cisco Unified Communications Manager Settings

# **MCU Devices**

The MCU Devices window provides the ability to add and delete MCU devices. There are two MCU devices supported by CTS-Manager—Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch (CTMS) and Cisco Unified Video Conference device (CUVC).

The MCU Devices support screen displays several attributes for each MCU device registered with Cisco TelePresence Manager.



If the MCU devices has a reinstall the device must be registered through Cisco TelePresence Manager. There are no errors generated by the MCU device software change. The Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch Administrator must inform you of the change.

#### Figure 9-22 MCU Devices Window

Sy	ste	em Configuration > M	lultipoint Conf	erence Unit			
M	CU	Devices					
S	Ser	vice Status:		ОК			
							Showing 1 - 2 of 2 records
		Hostname 🔻	Type 🔻	Control State 🔻	Desc	ription	IP Address
C	)	tsbu-ctm17	CTMS	Scheduled	CTS Manager		172.28.68.164
C	)	tsbu-cuvc	CUVC	Scheduled	CUVC		
F	irs	t < Previous	lext > Last	Rows Per Page: 10	V New	Edit Delete	Deallocate., Refresh

Table 9-15 describes the MCU Device fields.

Field	Description or Settings
Hostname	The hostname or IP address of the MCU. Clicking the hostname hyperlink opens a new browser window, with the CTMS login page.
Туре	The MCU Type is either CTMS or CUVC.
Control state	The Control state is either Scheduled or Non-Scheduled
Description	The Description field displays the MCU device description, added when the MCU device was added.
IP Address	The IP address of MCU.

#### **Deleting a MCU**

A Multipoint Conference Unit cannot be deleted if there are any associated scheduled meetings. If the MCU is a CUVC, with associated scheduled meetings, you must first Deallocate the CUVC resources before you can delete the device.

To delete a MCU Device, click the radio button next to the device and click Delete.

#### **Refreshing the list of MCUs**

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the list of MCU devices.



Once Interop has been enabled (see Application Settings), a CTMS device can only be added to CTS-Manager if it is interop-ready. An interop-ready device is defined as running a certain level of software release. Refer to the CTS-Manager Release Note for the recommended versions.

# **Access Management**

From the Directory Server, it is possible to create groups, such as a Concierge group and an Admin group. Use this window to view and create roles for these groups. CTS-Manager supports two roles—a concierge and an administrator.

The two roles have different levels of privilege and access when using CTS-Manager. Members in the group mapped to the Concierge role have limited privileges that allow them to view the meetings, rooms, and system error and log files. Members in the group mapped to the Administrator role have the privileges of the Concierge role plus additional privileges that allow them to make configuration changes.

### Figure 9-23 Access Management Window

Syste	m Configuration > Access	Management
Role	to LDAP Group Mappings	
Role	e: All 🗸	Filter
		Showing 1 - 1 of 1 records
	Role	LDAP FQDN
0	Concierge	CN=CTISConcierges,CN=Users,DC=srdev,DC=com
		Add Delete

### Assigning Roles to Groups Using Domino Directory Assistance

If your Cisco TelePresence Manager deployment is working with an IBM Domino Server and Domino Directory Assistance, it is possible for the group to contain a user from an external directory. That type of external user cannot be granted the CTS-Manager Administrator role. Only members of groups local to the IBM Domino Directory may be granted the Administrator role.

You can generate a report about specific LDAP Group mappings, as follows:

- Choose the role—All, Administrator, or Concierge—from the Role drop-down list.
- Click **Filter**.



When assigning different Directory Server groups to a role, the Add window may not list the group or groups you want to add. This is an Directory Server limitation when the number of groups returned by the query exceeds 500. If this occurs, click the Manual radio button in the Add window, specify the Group FQDN you are searching for and assign either the Concierge or Administrator role.

## **Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch (CTMS)**

A CTMS communicates with the Cisco TelePresence Manager. CTMSs provide the functionality for three or more Cisco TelePresence rooms to attend a conference call. Cisco TelePresence Manager provides the scheduling information to the different CTMSs and each CTMS provides the multipoint switching capabilities for the conference.

## **Adding a CTMS**

To register additional CTMS devices with Cisco TelePresence Manager, click **New** to display the Registration dialog box, and choose CTMS from the Type drop-down field.

Figure 9-24 Adding New CTMS - MCU Devices Window

🖻 tsbu-ctm18 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog 🛛 🔊				
New MCU Devices				
Type:         MCU Hostname:         Username:         Password:         Control State:	CTMS * * * Scheduled ONON-Scheduled			
* Required Fields	Save (	Close		

#### Table 9-16 Registering a CTMS with Cisco TelePresence Manager

Field	Description or Settings
	CTMS or CUVC are the only MCU types. If only CTMS appears in the drop-down list, Interop has not been enabled. Use the Application Settings window to enable Interop.
MCU Host Name	The hostname or IP address of the CTMS. This is the LHS of the complete Host name.
Username	This is the account name used to log into the CTMS.

Field	Description or Settings			
Password	This is the account password used to log into the CTMS.			
Control State	Specify whether the CTMS is available (scheduled) for meetings. The resources of a scheduled CTMS can be used when meetings are scheduled. Specifying a CTMS as Non-Scheduled means the CTMS will not be used when a meeting is scheduled.NoteCTMSs in a Scheduled state cannot be used to migrate meetings from other CTMSs.			

Iable 9-16 Registering a CTWS with Cisco Telepresence Manager (continued	Table 9-16	Registering a CTMS with Cisco TelePresence Manager (continued)
--	------------	--

### **Editing CTMS Settings**

To edit CTMS registration information, click the radio button next to the device and click **Edit**. The following table describes the CTMS settings that may be changed.

 Table 9-17
 Editing Registered CTMS Configuration Settings

Field	Description or Settings		
Username	This is the account name used to log into the MCU.		
Password	This is the account password used to log into the MCU.		
Control State	Specify whether the MCU is available for meetings. The resources of a scheduled MCU can be used when meetings are scheduled. Specifying a MCU as Non-Scheduled means the MCU will not be used when a meeting is scheduled.		
	<b>Note</b> CTMSs in a Scheduled state cannot be used to migrate meetings from other CTMSs.		

### **Cisco Unified Video Conferencing (CUVC)**

CTS-Manager support of CUVC enables video conferencing devices to join a scheduled Cisco TelePresence meeting. A CUVC is notified by and joins a Cisco TelePresence meeting through a CTMS. A CTMS device must be used to enable video conferencing devices to join, even if it is a point-to-point call.



Only one CUVC can be registered with CTS-Manager.

### Adding a CUVC

To add a CUVC device with Cisco TelePresence Manager, click **New** to display the Registration dialog box, and choose CUVC from the Type drop-down field.

Field	Description or Settings			
Туре	CTMS or CUVC are the only MCU types. If only CTMS appears in the drop-down list, Interop has not been enabled. Use the Application Settings window to enable Interop.			
	Note Only one CUVC may be registered with CTS-Manager.			
MCU Host Name	This is the LHS of the complete Host name.			
Control State	Specify whether the CUVC is available (scheduled) for meetings. The resources of a scheduled CUVC can be used when meetings are scheduled. Specifying a CUVC as Non-Scheduled means the CUVC will not be used when a meeting is scheduled.			
Access Number Prefix for CTMS	The access number prefix for your CTMS is based on your enterprise dialing plan.			
Access Number Prefix for Video Conferencing Participants	This access number prefix is based on your enterprise dialing plan.			
Conference ID Length	The Conference ID can be 1-8 digits in length. The system-generated Conference ID is used to create an Interop Access Number used by the CTMS to establish the conference call. It is also used to create the Interop Access Number sent in an email to meeting participants, as the dial-in phone number. The Conference ID length is based on your enterprise dialing plan.			
Multiple EMP Cards Support	Enabling EMP card support provides additional resources to support a greater number of video calls using the CUVC. CTS-Manager with EMP card support enabled allows up to 48 video calls per EMP card.			
	<b>Note</b> If you are using a CUVC 3515 MCU this option is disabled.			
Number of EMP Cards	Specify the number of EMP cards installed in the CUVC device.			
Maximum Participants per Conference	Enter a numeric value for the maximum number of meeting participants that may dial into the conference call.			
Minimum Participants per Conference	The minimum value for this field is 2. This value cannot exceed the Maximum Participants per Conference value.			
Total Resources	This value should be greater than the Maximum Participants per Conference.			
	NoteIf you have enabled EMP card support the values in the Total Resources field and the Minimum Participants per Conference field are calculated for you. The calculation is Number of EMP Cards x Maximum Participants per Conference.			

### Table 9-18 Registering a CUVC with Cisco TelePresence Manager

## **Editing CUVC Settings**

To edit CUVC registration information, click the radio button next to the device and click **Edit**. The following table describes the CUVC settings that may be changed.

Field	Description or Settings		
Control State	Specify whether the CUVC is available for meetings. The resources of a scheduled CUVC can be used when meetings are scheduled. Specifying a CUVC as Non-Scheduled means the CUVC will not be used when a meeting is scheduled.		
	<b>Note</b> If there are scheduled interop meetings you can't change a CUVC state to non-scheduled.		
Access Number Prefix for CTMS	The access number prefix for your CTMS is based on your enterprise dialing plan.		
Access Number Prefix for Video Conferencing Participants	This access number prefix is based on your enterprise dialing plan.		
Number of EMP Cards	This value in this field can be changed if Multiple EMP Card support is enabled.		
Maximum Participants per Conference	Enter a numeric value for the maximum number of meeting participants that may dial into the conference call.		
	<b>Note</b> The value in this field affects the number of CTMS resources reserved for a specific conference call.		
Minimum Participants per Conference	The minimum value for this field is 2. This value cannot exceed the Maximum Participants per Conference value.		
Total Resources	This value should be greater than the Maximum Participants per Conference.		

### Table 9-19 Editing Registered CUVC Configuration Settings

# Concierges

### **Concierge Role**

When a concierge logs into CTS-Manager, the following selections and information are available:

- System Information
- System Status
- Support
- Troubleshooting

The concierge is the first person contacted when there are questions or problems pertaining to connecting meeting participants. The concierge understands how to perform the following tasks:

- Scheduling meetings
- Using the Cisco IP phone in a Cisco TelePresence-enabled meeting room
- Using the tools supplied by the CTS-Manager to monitor the system and the schedule of upcoming meetings and to update meeting requests
- Gathering data to supply to the administrator when a problem cannot be easily solved

Concierges can be assigned rooms to monitor in the CTS-Manager application. Assigned concierges are easily reached by dialing the Concierges soft key on the Cisco IP phone in a Cisco TelePresence-enabled meeting room.

The Concierges window has two areas, a list of concierges and a list of rooms that need a concierge assigned to them. Use the areas in this window to assign a concierge to a meeting room.

A phone number is associated with the concierge, which is displayed on the Cisco TelePresence meeting room phone user interface when the Concierge soft key is pressed. Meeting participants can dial the concierge and ask for help when problems occur with the Cisco TelePresence system.

Figure 9-25 System Configuration - Concierge Window

Syste	em Configu	ration > Concier	ges				
Cond	ierges						
	_	ID	Phone Number	Descrip	otion		
۲	<unassigr< th=""><th>ned&gt;</th><th></th><th>System inst</th><th>alled concierge</th><th></th><th></th></unassigr<>	ned>		System inst	alled concierge		
						N	lew) [Edit] [Delete]
Roor	ns that hav	ve not been assig	ined				
						2	Showing 1 - 2 of 2 records
	Status 🔻	Room Name	7		Room Phone	Description	IP Address
	50	TelepresenceRoo	m15/Bldg 19 San Jose	È.	16250	Telepresen	172.28.69.216
	50	TelepresenceRoo	m14/Bldg 19 San Jose	65	16240	Telepresen	172.28.69.215
Firs	t] [ < Prev	vious Next >	Last Rows Per Pag	ge: 10 🗸	Assign	selected rooms to:	<unassigned> 💟 🗛 Apply</unassigned>

### **Creating Concierges**

To add a new Concierge, from this window, perform the following steps:

Step 1	Click New to display the New Concierges window.
Step 2	In the New Concierges window, enter an identifier for the Concierge in the ID field
Step 3	Enter a phone number in the Phone Number field.
Step 4	You can choose to supply other information identifying the concierge in the Description field.



When putting information in the Concierge Description Field do not use a Carriage Return or line feed, sometimes referred to as  $\langle CR \rangle$  between words (do not hit return key).

👌 tsbu-ctm30 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog 🛛 🗙				
New Concierges				
ID:		*		
Phone Number:		310		
Description:				
Set as Default:				
* Required Fields		Save Close		

Figure 9-26 Adding a Concierge Window

All Cisco TelePresence rooms must be assigned to a Concierge. If you haven't specified a Concierge for a room, the System installed <Unassigned> Concierge is the default Concierge for all rooms discovered in CTS-Manager. You can change the default Concierge to a specific Concierge by checking the Set as Default checkbox in the Concierge details window. Any Cisco TelePresence room discovered by CTS-Manager will be assigned to the new default Concierge. Each time you specify a different Concierge as the default, all future rooms discovered by CTS-Manager will be assigned to the new default.

## Assigning a Room to a Specific Concierge

Once Concierges have been registered, the next step is to assign them meeting rooms:

Step 1	Check the box next to a room that has not been assigned.				
Step 2	Select a concierge from the Assign Selected Rooms drop-down list.				
Step 3	Click Apply.				
	To edit the concierge assignment:				
Step 4	Select the radio button next to the Concierge ID and click Edit.				
Step 5	In the Edit Concierges window, you can change the phone number and other information identifying the concierge.				
Step 6	To delete a Concierge, select the radio button next to the concierge ID and click Delete.				



CTS-Manager 1.5 supports a default concierge that is assigned to endpoints that have no specific concierge assignment. Earlier versions of CTS-Manager allowed more than one concierge to have the same phone number. If you are upgrading to version 1.5 from an earlier version that allows a concierge to share a phone number with another concierge, during the upgrade CTS-Manager 1.5 changes the phone number of one of the concierges and assigns that concierge to the endpoint.

# **Policy Management**

The Policy Management window lists the three default policies to support scheduling and conference termination:

Figure 9-27	System Confi	guration - Policy	Management	Window

Syst	System Configuration > Policy Management							
Poli	Policy Management							
			Showing 1 - 3 of 3 records					
	Policy Name 🔻	Policy Type	Policy Description					
0	Default	CONF_MAN	This is the Default Conference Management Policy					
0	Default	CTS	This is the Default CTS Policy					
0	Default	CTMS	This is the Default CTMS Policy					
Fir	st < Previous Next > Last	Rows Per Page: 10 🗸	New Edit Delete					

• **CTMS policy**—describes the switching policy for multipoint meetings. The switching mode can be set to either Speaker or Room switching. You also use the policy management window to set the number of scheduled meetings pushed to CTMS devices. The default is to push 14 days of meetings, the range is 1 to 30 max.

#### Figure 9-28 CTMS Policy Window

e	tsbu-ctm18 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog 🛛 🔀			
Ľ	dit Policy Management			
	Name:	Default		
	Type:	CTMS		
	Description:	This is the Default CTMS Policy		
Ш	Switching Mode:	Speaker 💌		
	Number of days pushed to CTMS:	14		
	* Required Fields	Save Close		

• **CTS endpoint policy**—determines the number of days of scheduled meetings pushed to each endpoint. The default is 14 days, the range is from 1 to 30 max.

Figure 9-29	CTS Endpoint P	olicy Window

tsbu-ctm18 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog 🛛 🔀				
Edit Policy Management				
Name:	Default			
Type:	стя			
Description:	This is the Default CTS Policy			
Number of days pushed to phone:	14			
* Required Fields	Save Close			

- Conference Manager policy—specifies the following:
  - Force Meeting Termination—Setting this to "Yes" allows the endpoints and any MCU device to automatically terminate a conference call according to the scheduled meeting time. The default is "No", so that meeting participants can continue a call past the scheduled end time of the meeting.
  - Early Meeting Start in minutes—Determines how many minutes before a meeting's scheduled start time a participant can press the One-Button-to-Push to initiate a meeting.
  - Late Meeting End in minutes—Determines how many minutes a meeting may continue before the call is forced to terminate. This field is grayed out if Force Meeting Termination is set to No.



"Early Meeting Start in minutes" affects both point-to-point meetings and multipoint meetings. All other settings affect only multipoint meetings.

Figure 9-30	Conference	Manager	Policy	Window

tsbu-ctm18 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog		
Edit Policy Management		
Name:	Default	
Type:	CONF_MAN	
Description:	This is the Default Conference Management Policy	
Force Meeting Termination:	⊖Yes ⊙No	
Early Meeting Start in minutes:	10	
Late Meeting End in minutes:	0	
Notify Meeting End Prior To Scheduled End in minutes:	10	
* Required Fields	Save Close	

## **Remote Account**

Use this window to set up limited access for remote users of this CTS-Manager. The remote account is intended for use by Cisco technical support personnel so they can access the system remotely to troubleshoot problems. Secure Shell (SSH) is used to access the system. The remote account is typically enabled for a brief period. Disabling the account will cause whoever is logged onto the system to be logged off. Only one remote account can be set up at a time, but more than one remote account can be active at the same time.

Login to the remote account is done using the account name and a pass phrase generated by software in this CTS-Manager. The remote user uses the account name, the pass phrase, and a utility available at an internal Cisco web site to generate a login name and password that allow access to this Cisco TelePresence Manager.

#### Figure 9-31 System Settings Window Remote Account Tab

System Configuration > System Settings	
IP Settings NTP Settings SNMP Settings Remote Acco	punt Password System
Account Name:	36
Duration (days):	38
	Add

To start the remote login account process:

- **Step 1** Type a name for the remote login account in the **Account Name** field.
  - This name can be anything you choose, using English characters.
- **Step 2** Type in the number of days that the account should be active.
- Step 3 Click Add.

This step generates a pass phrase.

To complete this process, the account name and pass phrase are entered into a utility at the following Cisco Internal web site:

https://remotesupporttool.cisco.com/logon.php

For security reasons, if remote users fail to log off, they will be logged off automatically at the time listed in the Expires field.

# **System Configuration - System Settings**

Use the System Configuration, System Settings window to restart CTS-Manager.

Figure 9-32 System Settings Window System Tab

System Configuration > System Settings					
IP Settings NTP Settings	SNMP Settings Remote Account Password System				
Username:	admin				
Password:	24				
		Restart Shutdown			

**Step 1** To restart the system, click on the System tab.

- The username cannot be changed.
- **Step 2** Enter your password.
- Step 3 Click on Restart.

This will restart the CTS-Manager system.

# **Application Settings**

The System Configuration Applications Settings window is used to set three different options: Interoperability with Video Conferencing, Intercompany, and Meeting Notification Email.

Figure 9-33 Application Settings Window

		🔿 Yes 💿 No +	Enable Feature:
			ntercompany
	Another Company Hosts	O Yes ⊙ No	Enable Feature:
	Our Company Hosts	⊖ Yes ⊚ No	chable realure.
			Meeting Notification Email
		⊙ Yes ○ No	Enable Feature:
	++		Copy Outgoing Email To:
Apply Rese			
	++	⊙ Yes ○ No	

### Interoperability with Video Conferencing Settings

The default setting for inter operability with video conferencing is "Disable." If the setting is grayed out and cannot be changed to "Enable," there is at least one CTS endpoint or MCU device that is not interop-ready. All endpoints and CTMS MCUs must support interop before you can enable Interop settings. Make sure all devices discovered by CTS-Manager are running interop-enabled software releases.

If Interoperability with Video Conferencing has been set to "Enable" and is grayed out so that you can't disable it, the CUVC, added through the MCU devices window, is included in at least one scheduled meeting. In order to disable interop services, you must first **Deallocate** the CUVC, and then **Delete** it from the MCU Devices window.

### **Intercompany Setting**

Enabling Intercompany allows you to schedule multipoint meetings between two different organizations. Once you enable the Intercompany feature it cannot be disabled.

## **Meeting Notification Email Settings**

The default setting for Meeting Notification Email is 'Yes'. If you change this setting to 'No' you disable email notifications, and Confirmation emails and Action Required emails are not sent to meeting organizers.

You can also specify an additional email address. All emails generated by Cisco TelePresence Manager will also be sent to this address.

A secondary email address specified for IBM Domino installations is included in the BCC field when emails are generated.

A secondary email address specified for Microsoft Exchange installations is included in the CC field when emails are generated.

# **CTS-Manager Redundancy Failover Procedure**

The Cisco TelePresence Manager configuration for a redundant system is to have a primary and a backup CTS-MAN system with a mirror configuration.



If a redundant system is configured, make sure database backups are performed regularly.

## **Cold Standby**

In a redundant system, the primary CTS-MAN is active and the backup is powered off.

When a CTS-MAN primary system stops working, meetings scheduled during this down-time will not be pushed to the phone. Meetings can still be scheduled in the Exchange of Notes during a the downtime and all meetings "one button to push" on the phone will not be affected. Once the backup CTS-MAN is online, meetings scheduled during the primary down-time will be processed and pushed to the phones.



It is recommended to use the same hostname and the same IP address for CTS-MAN replacement server.

#### **CTS-MAN Failover Procedure**

When the primary CTS-MAN fails, perform the following procedure:

- To start the failover procedure, power off the primary CTS-MAN system.
- Power on the backup CTS-MAN system.
- Restore the last CTS-MAN database to the backup CTS-MAN, click **Available Backups** to complete this task

Figure 9-34 System Configuration Database Restore Backup Window

st: sjc-cts-m	System Configuration > Dat	abase			
Unified CM	Settings Backup Restore				
Security Settings	Restore Type:		⊙ Local ○ Network		
Database	Restore Mode:		Sftp Ftp		
Microsoft Exchange	Remote Storage Host :			*	
LDAP Server Discovery Service	Port:		22		
MCU Devices			to to		
Concierges					
Access Management				*	
Policy Management				4-	
System Settings	* Required Fields			Available Backups	Verify Remote Host
Application Settings					
Software Upgrade	Destance Materia				
oubleshooting	Restore History				
System Log					Showing 0 - 0 of 0 rec

• Next, perform a re-sync with Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino database from the backup CTS-MAN.

Figure 9-35 System Configuration - Microsoft Exchange Re-sync Window

Host: sjc-cts-m	System Configuration > M	licrosoft Exchange			
	SMTP LHS:	CTSMan	*		
System Information	Password:	•••••	*		
Support	Certificate:		Browse		
Dashboard Scheduled Meetings	Number of Meetings Per Qu	iery: 100	*		
Required Fields     A MCU Devices				Test Connection Apply Reset	
32 Mod Devices Synchronization Operations					
System Configuration	Subscription Status:	All 🗸 Room		Filter	
B Database				Showing 1 - 3 of 3 records	
🚯 Microsoft Exchange 🔬 LDAP Server	Room Name 🔻	Last Sy	nchronization Time (+)	Subscription Status	
🗑 Discovery Service 🛛 🗹 1003		<b>√</b> 0	2/23/2009 12:03 AM	Success	
MCU Devices 1009		✓o	2/23/2009 12:03 AM	Success	
Concierges Z7990		<b>√</b> 0	2/23/2009 12:03 AM	Success	
🏙 Access Management					
Rolicy Management					
System Status	0				
day's Meetings:					
With Error: 🛛 🖏	0				
In Progress: 🛛 🖏	0				
Scheduled: 🐻	0 First < Previous N			Re-sync Refresh	
ther Errors: 🙆	3 First < Previous	ext > Last Rows Per Page	: 10 🗙	Re-sync Refresh	

• After ensuring the information is correct, click **Re-sync** to complete the re-sync.



## Warm Standby

### **CTMS Warm Standby for Scheduled Meetings**

Both the primary and backup CTMS systems are configured independently with different access numbers, etc.

Each CTMS is configured in the CTS-MAN. Both primary and backup CTMS are powered on and connected to the network at all times. The meetings will only be scheduled on and serviced by the primary CTMS.

### **CTS-MAN Redundancy Failover Procedure**

With a redundant CTS-MAN system, make sure to configure two CTMS and register the primary with CTS-MAN in "Scheduled" mode and the backup in "Non-Scheduled" mode.

۵. Note

Both CTMS are active, but meetings are to be scheduled on the primary "Scheduled" CTMS

When the primary CTS-MAN fails, perform the following procedure:

- **Step 1** To start the failover procedure process, power off the primary CTS-Man.
- **Step 2** Power on the backup CTS-MAN.
- **Step 3** Restore the last CTS-MAN database to the backup CTMS, click **Available Backups** to complete this task

**Note** During a primary CTMS failure, all multipoint meetings in progress will be disconnected and no new meetings will be allowed to start. Migrating all meetings is only allowed to a non-scheduled CTMS.

### Figure 9-36 System Configuration Database Restore Backup Window

sjc-cts-m	System Configuration > Dat	tabase			
Unified CM 🧭	Settings Backup Restore				
tem Configuration Security Settings	Restore Type:		O Local O Network		
Database	Restore Mode:		Sftp Ftp		
Nicrosoft Exchange	Remote Storage Host :		0.014	*	
DAP Server Discovery Service	Ports		22	*	
MCU Devices					
Concierges					
Access Management					
Policy Management					
System Settings	* Required Fields			Available Backups	Verify Remote Host
Application Settings Software Upgrade					
ibleshooting	Restore History				
System Log					Showing 0 - 0 of 0 rec
Log Files	Time stamp (+) 🔻	Status	Type	Hostname	Location

### **CTMS Redundancy Failover Procedure**

**Step 1** When the primary CTMS fails, log into CTS-MAN and migrate all scheduled meeting to the backup "non-scheduled" CTMS.

Figure 9-37 System Configuration MCU Devices - Details Window

Status	s: 4	🕽 sjc-ctsmgr-exh03 - Cisco	TelePresence Manager Web Page Dialog	×	Filter
		Details			Showing 1 - 1 of 1 recor
	Statu	-		n	
) (	эк	Туре:	CTMS		
		MCU Hostname:	172.28.29.46		
	- 11	Username:	CTSMAN		
	— U	Timezone:	PST8PDT		
	- 11	Access Numbers:	27997		
	- 11	Segment Count:	24		
	- 11	Control State:	Scheduled		
	- 11	Migrate All Meetings To:	×		
				Save Close	
irst	<				Update Schedule View Meetings

Step 2 Change the Control State of primary CTMS to Non-scheduled

**Step 3** Change the Control State of the backup CTMS to **Scheduled**.

Figure 9-38 System Configuration MCU Devices - Edit Window

cisco Tel	ePresence Manage	r	admin	Logout   Preferences   Help   About
Host: sjc-cts-m	sic-cts-man-1 - Cisco Telef	Presence Manager Web Page D	alog	×
Dashboard	Edit MCU Devices	roomee manager fred roge o	awe	
A MCU Devices	MCU Hostname:	172.28.29.46		
The Dornes	Username:	CTSMAN	*	howing 1 - 1 of 1 records
<ul> <li>System Configuration</li> </ul>	Password:	••••	*	IP Address
🍰 Security Settings	Control State:	Scheduled O Nor	-Scheduled	172.28.29.46
Database	Timezone:	PST8PDT		
📦 Microsoft Exchange 🔊 LDAP Server	Access Numbers:	27997		
Discovery Service	Segment Count:	24		
MCU Devices	* Required Fields			Save Close
🎒 Access Managemen				
👰 Policy Management				
System Settings				
Application Settings				IL I Delete I Deallocate Refresh
System Status	Q FISC C Previous	Rows Per Pa	ge: 10 Y (New) (20	itim Delete Dearlocate Refresi

All scheduled multipoint meetings are moved to the backup CTS-MAN and "One Button to Push" entries are updated with the new CTMS access number and conference ID. The time it takes to update all meeting entries and update all phones will vary depending on the number of meetings and CTS endpoints.





# **Monitoring Cisco TelePresence Manager**

Revised: June 11, 2009, OL-13673-04

## **Contents**

- Introduction, page 10-2
- Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN, page 10-2
- Scheduled Meetings, page 10-3
- MCU Devices, page 10-12
- Cisco Unified Communications Manager, page 10-18

# Introduction

System monitoring tasks consist primarily of monitoring and updating meeting schedules and monitoring the status of rooms and system services.

# **Post-Install Guidelines for CTS-MAN**

The purpose of this guide is to outline the information you will need to reference in order to continue to configure the system after installing the CTS-MAN.

The flow of tasks you need to do for additional configurations for the CTS-MAN are provided in the following table.

### Table 10-1 Post-Install Guidelines for Configuring CTS-MAN

Configuring Procedures Guidelines after Installing CTS-MAN	Description	Location
Monitoring CTS Manager	Describes the support features available when you log into CTS-Manager using a Concierge role.	Current Chapter
CTS-MAN Emails and End-User Web UI	The Calendar service (either Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino) sends an acceptance email to the meeting organizer, with the notice that the rooms have been reserved and placed on the calendar. CTS-Manager also sends either a Confirmation email or an Action Required email to the meeting organizer when a meeting is scheduled	Chapter 11, "CTS-MAN Emails and End-User Web UI"

If at any time you encounter problems, go to Chapter 13, "Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager" to see how to correct the problem.

# **Scheduled Meetings**

Figure 10-1	Scheduled Meetings	window
-------------	--------------------	--------

Sta Roo	rt on: 12/8/2008	End on: Scheduler:	12/18/2		Status: All MCU:	Filter
					Showi	ng 1 - 10 of 17 recor
	Start Time (+) 🔻	End Time (+)	Status	Room	Scheduler 🔻	Subject
D	12/08/2008 09:00 AM	12/08/2008 09:30 AM	<u>[]</u>	TelepresenceRoom31 TelepresenceRoom32 TelepresenceRoom33	avilan@srd	Recurring multipoir
D	12/09/2008 08:00 AM	12/09/2008 08:30 AM	*	TelepresenceRoom32	avilan@srd	Single room meeti
D	12/09/2008 10:00 AM	12/09/2008 10:30 AM	<u>[]</u>	TelepresenceRoom31 TelepresenceRoom32 TelepresenceRoom33	chen@srdev	<u>3 days no end</u>
D	12/10/2008 08:00 AM	12/10/2008 08:30 AM	[] O	TelepresenceRoom32 TelepresenceRoom33	avilan@srd	P2P recurring
D	12/11/2008 11:30 AM	12/11/2008 12:00 PM	<b>S</b>	TelepresenceRoom31 TelepresenceRoom32	Motwani@sr	<u>Test 1</u>
D	12/11/2008 05:00 PM	12/11/2008 05:30 PM	( <sup>c</sup> ]	TelepresenceRoom31 TelepresenceRoom32 TelepresenceRoom33	Motwani@sr	<u>Single room meetin</u>
D	12/11/2008 08:00 PM	12/11/2008 08:10 PM	[] S	TelepresenceRoom31 TelepresenceRoom32	Halim@srde	<u>Test 32 -</u> <u>Recurring</u>
D	12/12/2008 10:00 AM	12/12/2008 10:30 AM	[] O	TelepresenceRoom31 TelepresenceRoom32 TelepresenceRoom33	chen@srdev	<u>3 days no end</u>
D	12/12/2008 02:32 PM	12/12/2008 02:49 PM	[]	TelepresenceRoom32 TelepresenceRoom33 TelepresenceRoom34	chen@srdev	daily no end
D	12/15/2008 09:00 AM	12/15/2008 09:30 AM	[2]	TelepresenceRoom31 TelepresenceRoom33 TelepresenceRoom32	avilan@srd	Recurring multipoir

(+) All times are shown in time zone America/Los\_Angeles (GMT -8.0)

When a Cisco TelePresence meeting is scheduled using Microsoft Outlook or IBM Lotus Notes, an e-mail is generated to confirm the meeting and provide a link to meeting details. The Scheduled Meetings window provides another way to view and modify meeting details.

## **Process/Response Times for Scheduled Meetings**

Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino calender servers typically confirm a meeting request within one minute if all the affected meeting rooms are in auto-accept mode. A meeting room in proxy mode must have a delegate respond to a meeting invite. This can affect the response time for a scheduled meeting. Once all room reservations are confirmed the meeting should appear in the Scheduled Meetings window and the phone UI within five minutes. If email alerts are turned on, confirmation or error emails are generated and sent within 10-15 minutes.

### **Modifying Meeting Details from a Calendar Client**

- If a meeting organizer updates the Subject field of a meeting scheduled with Lotus Notes that has already been sync'd with CTS-Manager, the update is not reflected in phone user interface.
- If a meeting is modified within a few minutes of the meeting's starting time (such as a time change, or room change), the modification may not appear on the room phone screen or in the Cisco TelePresence Manager's Scheduled Meetings window. This does not affect any user's ability to schedule a new meeting at the original time (pre-modified) time.
- A notification email is not generated if a meeting is processed as part of a server startup.

Note

A tentative room meeting process in CTS Manager does not work for the Domino Calendar server at this time.

## **Calendar Scheduling Limitation**

CTS-Manager only displays endpoint scheduling information for a 12 month window. If a meeting organizer schedules a recurring meeting with meeting instances that extend outside this window, those meeting instances are added to the CTS-Manager database as the calendar date moves forward. If a meeting organizer schedules a future meeting outside the present 12 month window the meeting is not displayed in CTS-Manager until the meeting falls inside the 12 month window.

## **Generating Scheduled Meeting Reports**

You can generate a report about specific scheduled meetings or activity between specific dates by supplying any or all of the following details:

- **Step 1** Type the meeting room name in the **Room** field.
- Step 2 Type the user name of the meeting organizer in the Scheduler field.
- **Step 3** From the **Status** drop-down list, choose the All, Needs Help, With Error, In Progress, Scheduled, Completed, or No Show meeting status.



**Note** A meeting is in the Needs Help state if the Concierge soft key on the room phone has been selected.

- **Step 4** Use the Calendar icon to choose beginning and ending dates, or type the dates in the Start On and End On fields using the MM/DD/YYYY date format.
- **Step 5** Type the name of the MCU.
- Step 6 Click Filter.

Table 10-2 describes the Scheduled Meetings information.

#### Table 10-2 Scheduled Meetings Information

Field	Description or Setting
Start Time	The scheduled starting time for a meeting. Click the arrow in the header of the Start Time column to sort the time from earliest to latest or latest to earliest.
End Time	The scheduled ending time for a meeting.
Status	Meeting status: All, With Error, In Progress, Scheduled, Completed, or No Show.
Room	Meeting room name as specified in the Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino database.
Scheduler	Login name of the person who scheduled the meeting. Click the arrow in the header of the Scheduler column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.
Subject	Information (such as the meeting subject) provided about the meeting.

**Note** If a meeting does not appear in the list Scheduled Meetings and it is a recurring meeting, check the starting date of the first occurrence of the meeting. If the meeting was scheduled to begin more than two years in the past, reschedule future occurrences.

### **Exporting Scheduled Meeting Data**

You can use the **Export Data** button to export your scheduled meeting data to a tab-separated values (.tsv) file. The meeting data exported includes the meetings appearing in the Scheduled Meetings window.

Use the filter to display only the scheduled meetings you want to export. You can export as many as 500 meetings. The exported data file is a tab-delimited text file.

	A	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н
1	Start Time [Start on: 2/10/2009]	End Time [End on: 02/13/2009]	Instance Type	Status [Matches: All]	Room [Matches: All]	Scheduler [Matches: All]	Subject	MCU (Matches: All)
2	2/10/2009 10:00	2/10/2009 10:30	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	No Show	TelepresenceRoom31   TelepresenceRoom32   TelepresenceRoom33	ohen@srdev.com	3 days no end	
3	2/10/2009 11:00	2/10/2009 11:30	Single	Scheduled	TelepresenceRoom32    TelepresenceRoom31	superuser@srdev.com	Testing again	
4	2/10/2009 15:00	2/10/2009 15:30	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	Scheduled	TelepresenceRoom32    TelepresenceRoom31	shrivastava@srdev.com	more than 800 occurrences	
5	2/11/2009 15:00	2/11/2009 15:30	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	Scheduled	TelepresenceRoom31∥ TelepresenceRoom32	shrivastava@srdev.com	more than 800 occurrences	
6	2/12/2009 11:30	2/12/2009 12:00	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	Scheduled	TelepresenceRoom31   TelepresenceRoom32	Motwani@srdev.com	Test 1	
7	2/12/2009 15:00	2/12/2009 15:30	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	Scheduled	TelepresenceRoom32    TelepresenceRoom31	shrivastava@srdev.com	more than 800 occurrences	
8	2/12/2009 17:00	2/12/2009 17:30	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	With Error	TelepresenceRoom31   TelepresenceRoom33    TelepresenceRoom32	Motwani@srdev.com	Recording test - 3 rooms recurring	
9	2/12/2009 20:00	2/12/2009 20:10	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	With Error	TelepresenceRoom31   TelepresenceRoom32	Halim@srdev.com	Test 32 - Recurring weekly no end date with 2 rooms	
10	2/13/2009 10:00	2/13/2009 10:30	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	With Error	TelepresenceRoom31   TelepresenceRoom33   TelepresenceRoom32	chen@srdev.com	3 days no end	
11	2/13/2009 14:32	2/13/2009 14:49	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	Scheduled	TelepresenceRoom33    TelepresenceRoom32	chen@srdev.com	daily no end	
12	2/13/2009 15:00	2/13/2009 15:30	Recurring Meeting (Instance)	Scheduled	TelepresenceRoom32    TelepresenceRoom31	shrivastava@srdev.com	more than 800 occurrences	
13 14 15	Report generated at: T Report generated by: a	uesday, February 10, 200 dmin	09 11:01 AM (America	/Los_Angeles)				
16	Report generated by: a Report generated from							
17		time zone: America/Los	Angeles					

### Figure 10-2 Viewing Exported Scheduled Meeting Data

### **Meeting Details**

To see meeting details, click the radio button next to a scheduled meeting and click Details.

For more information about the Meeting Details window refer to "Chapter 11, "CTS-MAN Emails and End-User Web UI"."

### Rooms

Choose Rooms to display information about the Cisco TelePresence meeting rooms. The Rooms Support window is divided into three, tabbed views.

• The **Summary** view displays the status of all the Cisco TelePresence rooms registered with Cisco TelePresence Manager. Table 10-3 on page 10-8 describes information in this window.

- The **Status** view displays the different error types for Cisco Unified CM, each Cisco TelePresence System registered with Cisco TelePresence Manager, and Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino connection errors. Table 10-4 describes information in this window.
- The **Capability** view displays the availability of certain Cisco TelePresence features. Table 10-5 describes information in this window.

#### **Generating Room Reports**

You can generate a report about specific meeting rooms and meeting status, as follows:

Step 1 Choose the status—All, OK, Error, Needs Help, or In Use—from the Status drop-down list.



A room is in the Needs Help state if the Concierge soft key on the room phone has been selected.

- **Step 2** Type the meeting room in the **Room** field.
- Step 3 Click Filter.

# Note

A maximum of 100 rooms are displayed per page. If you have more than 100 rooms registered with Cisco TelePresence Manager you can click the **Next** button to display the additional rooms.

### Figure 10-3 Room Window Summary Tab

							Showing 1 - 4 of	4 record
	Status 🔻	Room Name 🔻	Room Phone	Help Contact	Time Zone	Description	IP Address	Unifie CM
0	10	TelepresenceRoom34	44000		Pacific Standard/Day	Telepresence Room 34 (Spa	172.28.69.230	<u>tsbu-</u> ctm23
0	Fo	TelepresenceRoom32	32000		Pacific Standard/Day	Telepresence Room 32	172.28.69.228	<u>tsbu-</u> ctm23
0	i.	TelepresenceRoom31	31000		Pacific Standard/Day	Telepresence Room 31	172.28.69.227	<u>tsbu-</u> ctm23
0	fio	TelepresenceRoom33	43000		Pacific Standard/Day	Telepresence Room 33	172.28.69.229	<u>tsbu-</u> <u>ctm23</u>
					Standard, Saym	55		ounize

### Table 10-3Room Summary

Field	Description or Setting
Status	Room status: All, OK, Error, Needs Help, or In Use. Click the arrow in the header of the Status column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.
Room Name	Meeting room name.
Room Phone	Meeting room telephone number.
Help Contact	Concierge who is assigned to the room.
Time Zone	Displays the Time Zone location of the endpoint.
Description	Meeting room description. If text is truncated in this field, move your mouse pointer over the text to see the entire description.
IP Address	IP address of the Cisco TelePresence System.
	Click the address to go to the Cisco TelePresence System Administration login page.
Cisco Unified CM	IP address of Cisco Unified CM
	Click the address to go to the Cisco Unified CM Administration login page.

## Manually Updating Room Schedules on the Cisco TelePresence Room Phone

To update a room's IP phone with what is currently scheduled in the Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino database, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Click the radio button associated with a room.
- Step 2 Click Update Schedule.

## **Viewing Scheduled Meetings for a Specific Room**

To obtain additional information about any meetings associated with a room, perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Click the radio button associated with a room.

Step 2 Click View Meetings.



Support >	Rooms									
Summary	Status Capability									
Rooms										
Status:	All 💌 Room:								F	filter
								Shov	ving 1 - 4 of 4 r	ecords
				Connectivity		стѕ	Unifie	d CM	Microsoft Exc	hange
			Unified	Unified	CTS	CTS	Profile	Email	Subscription	Sync
Status 🔻	Room Name	*	См/стя	CM/Phone	Man/CTS	Error	T	ID 🔻	subscription T	- sync
Wa .	TelepresenceRoom34		→ ✓	▼	▼	×	×	~	×	~
10	TelepresenceRoom32		~	×	¥	X	×	~	×	~
6	TelepresenceRoom31					×		~	¥	~
6	TelepresenceRoom33		~	×	×	X	~	~	×	~
First	< Previous Next > []	ast Rows Per	Page: 10	*						

### Table 10-4Room Status

Field	Description or Setting
Status	Room status: All, OK, Error, Needs Help, or In Use. Click the arrow in the header of the Status column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.
Room Name	Meeting room name.
Connectivity	
Cisco Unified CM/CTS	An <b>X</b> indicates a problem with the connection between Cisco Unified CM and the Cisco TelePresence room.
Cisco Unified CM/Phone	An <b>X</b> indicates a problem with the connection between Cisco Unified CM and the IP phone in the TelePresence meeting room.
CTS Man/CTS	An <b>X</b> indicates a problem with the connection between the Cisco TelePresence Manager and the Cisco TelePresence room.
CTS	
CTS Error	An <b>X</b> indicates a communication problem between the Cisco TelePresence meeting room and Cisco Unified CM.
Cisco Unified CM	
Profile	An <b>X</b> indicates a problem with the Cisco TelePresence System user profile stored in Cisco Unified CM.
Email ID	An X indicates a problem with the Cisco TelePresence System email ID stored in Cisco Unified CM.
Microsoft Exchange	
Subscription	An <b>X</b> indicates a subscription problem between the TelePresence meeting room and Microsoft Exchange.
	<b>Note</b> A subscription error may be indicated by an <b>X</b> when there is no error. This can be caused when an invalid email address is assigned in Unified CM, that does not match the email address in Microsoft Exchange.
Sync	An <b>X</b> indicates a synchronization problem between the room and Microsoft Exchange.
IBM Domino	
Subscription	An <b>X</b> indicates a polling problem between the TelePresence meeting room and the Domino server
	<b>Note</b> A subscription error may be indicated by an <b>X</b> when there is no error. This can be caused when an invalid email address is assigned in Unified CM, that does not match the email address in IBM Domino.
Sync	An <b>X</b> indicates a synchronization problem between the TelePresence meeting room and the Domino server.

### Figure 10-5 Room Window Capability Tab

Status     Room Name     CTS     Multipoint     Projector     Document     Conference     Interop     Satelli       Version     *     *     *     *     *     *     *     *     Satelli		Satellite								
TelepresenceRoom34     Available     X     X     ✓     ✓     X       CTS     CTS     V     X     ✓     ✓     ✓	FPS S	Room	Interop Roc	Termination	Camera	-	Conference	Version	Room Name 🔻	
TelepresenceRoom32 1.5.0 🗸 X X 🗸 🗸	×	×	<ul> <li></li> </ul>	*	×	×	*		TelepresenceRoom34	6
0	×	~	< · ·	*	×	×	~	1.5.0	TelepresenceRoom32	80
CTS TelepresenceRoom31 1.5.0 V X X V V V (janngu	×	~	< · ·	*	×	×	~	CTS 1.5.0	TelepresenceRoom31	HQ HQ
CTS TelepresenceRoom33 1.5.0 V X X V V (1916)	×	~	× •	*	×	×	~	1.5.0	TelepresenceRoom33	<b>1</b> 0

### Table 10-5Room Capability

Field	Description or Setting
Status	Room status: All, OK, Error, Needs Help, or In Use. Click the arrow in the header of the Status column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.
Room Name	Meeting room name.
CTS Version	Displays the software release version for the CTS endpoint.
	<b>Note</b> Versions of CTS prior to 1.5 only display "Not Available" in this field. This does not affect any functionality.
Multipoint Conference	A check specifies the endpoint supports multipoint meetings.
Projector	A check specifies the endpoint includes a working projector.
Document Camera	A check specifies a document camera is installed.
Conference Termination	A check specifies the endpoint supports conference termination. Refer to "Policy Management, page 9-44" in Monitoring Cisco TelePresence Manager for more information about conference termination.
Interop	A check specifies the endpoint supports Interop calls.

Field	Description or Setting
Satellite Room	A check specifies the endpoint is using a satellite connection.
30 FPS	A check specifies the endpoint supports 30 frames per second data streaming for presentations.
Web Services Security	A check specifies the endpoint supports HTTPS communications.

TADIE 10-5 ROOM Capability (continued)	Table 10-5	Room Capability (continued)
--	------------	-----------------------------

# **MCU** Devices

Choose MCU Devices (Multipoint Conference Unit) to display information about the MCUs associated with Cisco TelePresence Manager. The MCU window is divided into two tabs—Summary and Capability.

## **Summary Tab**

The Summary tab lists the MCU devices associated with CTS-Manager.

### **Generating Multipoint Conference Unit Reports**

You can generate a report about specific MCU devices with the following steps:

Choose the status—All, OK, or Error—from the <b>Status</b> drop-down list.	
Type the MCU Hostname in the MCU field.	
Click Filter.	
Select a MCU and click <b>Details</b> to display a detailed report about the MCU device.	
5 Select a MCU and click <b>Update Schedule</b> to send the latest meetings schedule to the MCU.	
	here is
	Type the MCU Hostname in the MCU field.         Click Filter.         Select a MCU and click Details to display a detailed report about the MCU device.         Select a MCU and click Update Schedule to send the latest meetings schedule to the MCU.         Note         The Update Schedule button is not available when you select a CUVC device, because the second sec

**Step 6** Select a MCU and click **View Meetings** to display a list of meetings assigned to that MCU.
#### Figure 10-6 MCU Window Summary Tab

Supp	Support > Multipoint Conference Unit									
Sum	Summary Capability									
MCL	MCU Devices									
Sta	Status: All V MCU:									
					Showing 1 - 2 of 2 records					
	Status	Hostname 🔻	Type 🔻	Control State 🔻	Description					
0	Error	tsbu-ctm17	CTMS	Scheduled	CTS Manager					
0	OK	<u>tsbu-cuvc</u>	CUVC	Scheduled	CUVC					
Fir	st < Prev	vious Next > Las	t Rows Per Pa	age: 10 🗸	Details Update Schedule View Meetings					

#### Table 10-6 Multipoint Conference Unit

Field	Description or Settings
Status	MCU status: All, OK, or Error. Click the arrow in the header of the Status column to sort the list in ascending or descending alphabetical order.
	<b>Note</b> A CUVC always shows a status of OK.
Hostname	The address of the MCU.
Туре	CTS-Manager supports two types of MCU:
	Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch (CTMS)
	• Cisco Unified Video Conferencing (CUVC)
Control state	Control state: Scheduled or Non-scheduled. A MCU is available for meetings if it is in a Scheduled Control state.
Description	The description field displays information about the MCU.

#### Figure 10-7 CTMS Details Window

e	tsbu-ctm18 - Cisco TelePresence Manager Webpage Dialog 🛛 🛛 🔀					
Ľ	Details					
ī						
Ш	Туре:	CTMS				
Ш	MCU Hostname:	tsbu-ctm17				
Ш	Username:	tsbu-ctm17usr				
Ш	Timezone:	America/Los_Angeles				
Ш	Access Numbers:	17410				
Ш	Segment Count:	48				
Ш	Control State:	Scheduled				
Ш	Migrate All Meetings To:					
		Save Close				

#### Table 10-7Details Window for a CTMS

Field	Description or Settings
Туре	This is always CTMS.
MCU Hostname	This is the address of the MCU.
Username	Username used to log into the MCU.
Timezone	Displays the timezone where the MCU is located.
Access Numbers	The MCU dial-in phone number.
Segment Count	The number of resources available on the MCU.
Control State	Scheduled or Non-scheduled.
	A MCU is available for meetings if it is in a Scheduled Control state.
Migrate All Meetings To	All meetings scheduled to use the MCU can be migrated to a Non-scheduled MCU. Click the checkbox and choose another MCU from the drop-down list.

### Figure 10-8 CUVC Details Window

Туре:	CUVC
MCU Hostname:	tsbu-cuvc
Access Number Prefix for CTMS:	123
Access Number Prefix for Video Conference Participants:	432
Conference ID Length:	1
Maximum Participants per Conference:	4
Minimum Participants per Conference:	2
Total resources:	4
Control State:	Scheduled
Multiple EMP Cards Support:	Disabled
	Clos

#### Table 10-8Details Window for a CUVC

Field	Description or Settings
Туре	This is always CUVC.
MCU Hostname	This is the address of the MCU.
Access Number Prefix for CTMS	The access number prefix for your CTMS is based on your enterprise dialing plan.
Access Number Prefix for Video Conferencing Participants	This access number prefix is based on your enterprise dialing plan.
Conference ID Length	The values can be 1-8.
Maximum Participants per Conference	Enter a numeric value for the maximum number of meeting participants that may dial into the conference call.
Minimum Participants per Conference	The minimum value for this field is 2. This value cannot exceed the Maximum Participants per Conference value.

Field	Description or Settings
Total Resources	This value should be greater than the Maximum Participants per Conference.
	NoteIf you have enabled EMP card support the values in the Total Resources field and the Minimum Participants per Conference field are calculated for you. The calculation is Number of EMP Cards x Maximum Participants per Conference.
Control State	Scheduled or Non-scheduled. A MCU is available for meetings if it is in a Scheduled Control state.
Multiple EMP Cards Support	Enabling EMP card support provides additional resources to support a greater number of video calls using the CUVC. CTS-Manager with EMP card support enabled allows up to 48 video calls per EMP card.

#### Table 10-8 Details Window for a CUVC (continued)

### **Capability Tab**

The Capability tab identifies the Cisco TelePresence features available for each MCU device. Refer to Figure 10-9 on page 10-17.

#### Figure 10-9 MCU Window Capability Tab

Support > Multipoint Conference Unit									
Summary	Summary Capability								
MCU Devices									
Status:	Status: All 🕶 MCU:								
						Shov	ving 1 - 2 of 2 records		
Status	Hostname 🔻	Type 🔻	Version 🔻	Switching T	Conference Termination 🔻	Interop T	Web Services Security 🔻		
Error	tsbu-ctm17	CTMS	1.5.0.0 (158)	~	*	*	9		
ОК	<u>tsbu-cuvc</u>	CUVC		×	×	×	2		
First	< Previous Next >	Last Rows	Per Page: 10	) 🗸					

Table 10-9MCU Capability

Field	Description or Settings
Status	MCU status. OK or error.
Hostname	The hostname for the MCU device.
Туре	Identifies the MCU as either CTMS or CUVC.
Version	Displays the software version running on the device.
Switching	A check specifies the device supports either speaker or room switching.
Conference Termination	A check specifies the device supports conference termination. Refer to "Policy Management, page 9-44" in Monitoring Cisco TelePresence Manager for more information about conference termination.
Interop	A check specifies the device is running a software version that supports interop services.
Web Services Security	A check specifies the endpoint supports HTTPS communications.

# **Cisco Unified Communications Manager**

To display settings that associate the Cisco TelePresence Manager with Cisco Unified CM, choose Support > Unified CM.

#### Figure 10-10 Cisco Unified CM Window

Support > Unified CM					
Service Status:	ОК				
Hostname:	tsbu-ctm23				
IP Address:	172.28.68.182				

Table 10-10 describes fields and settings for the CUCM

Field	Description or Settings			
Service Status	Display-only status report of system services.			
	You may see a progress indicator in the status field, especially if many Cisco TelePresence meeting rooms are being managed by CTS-Manager. Each time this page is accessed, the status is updated, and the progress indicator will be seen while the system is discovering meeting rooms.			
	CautionAn error status may be reported if the connection to Cisco Unified CM was caused by a network outage. You can remove the error status by clicking Discover Rooms on the System Configuration > Discovery Service page.			
Hostname	Name of the Unified CM server host.			
IP Address	IP address of Unified CM server host.			

 Table 10-10
 Cisco Unified Communications Manager Settings





# **CTS-MAN Emails and End-User Web UI**

Revised: June 11, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

### **Contents**

- Contents, page 11
- Point-to-Point Meetings, page 11
- Multipoint Meetings, page 11
- Action Required Email, page 11
- Confirmation Meeting Details Window, page 11
  - Meeting Details, page 11
  - Occurrence Details Pane, page 11
  - Meeting Options Tab, page 11
  - Interoperability Options, page 11
  - Intercompany Host Meeting Options, page 11
  - Intercompany Participant Meeting Options, page 11
- Action Required Meeting Details Window, page 11

### Introduction

Cisco TelePresence meetings are scheduled between two or more conference rooms. The Calendar service (either Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino) sends an acceptance email to the meeting organizer, with the notice that the rooms have been reserved and placed on the calendar. CTS-Manager also sends either a Confirmation email or an Action Required email to the meeting organizer when a meeting is scheduled.

The Confirmation email provides additional information about the scheduled Cisco TelePresence meeting, including a link to the CTS-Manager Meeting Details window. In order to access the Meeting Details window the meeting organizer must log into CTS-Manager using their Windows logon account (account name and password). For more information about Confirmation emails refer to the Point-to-Point Meetings and Multipoint Meetings sections below. For more information about the CTS-Manager Meeting Details window refer to the section Confirmation Meeting Details Window.

The Action Required email specifies the error that caused the email to be generated, and a link to the Meeting Details window.

### **Point-to-Point Meetings**

The Point-to-Point meeting confirmation email is described in Table 11-1.

#### Figure 11-1 Point to Point Meeting Confirmation Email

	recurring - Message (HTML) Actions Help	_ 🗆 X					
From: Cisco TelePPresence Manager To: Jake Avilan Cc:	Sent: Thu 10/16/2008 1:43 AM						
Subject: TelePresence meeting - CONFIRMED - P	ce meeting has been CONFIRMED	*					
All occurrences of your meeting have be found by clicking the following link. <u>Click Here</u> * Additional Meeting Options	een confirmed. Additional options and information about this TelePresence meeting may b	e					
Clicking the link above may allow: • Participate in a meeting with othe • Include video conferencing sites, • Hide your meeting subject on the • Other options.							
Upcoming Occurrence Det	ails						
Subject:	P2P recurring						
Organizer:	Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)						
Start Time:	Wednesday, November 26, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana)						
End Time:	Wednesday, November 26, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana)						
Rooms:	TelepresenceRoom33 TelepresenceRoom32						
Meeting Subject on Phone:	Show						
This message has been sent from an unmonitored mailbox. Please do not respond to this email. Contact your TelePresence Help Desk for additional information. * Actual URL is https://tsbu-ctm18.cisco.com/scheduler/meetingMgr/schedulerHome.do?							
	37101A82E00800000000C097E3E12E2FC901000000000000000000000AEF1E	<u>,E61]</u>					
•		<b>&gt;</b>					

Email Section		Description
Confirmation Statement (below the email banner)		This section confirms the meeting is properly scheduled and contains the link to the Meeting Details window.
	single eeting, a recurring is section is	This section displays information about the scheduled meeting, including some options that are set in the Meeting Details window.
Email footer		The URL displayed at the bottom of the email is the same link to the Meeting Details window as the link in the Confirmation Statement above.

#### Table 11-1 Point-to-Point Meeting Confirmation Email

# **Multipoint Meetings**

The Multipoint meeting confirmation email is described in Table 11-2.

#### Figure 11-2 Multipoint Meeting Confirmation Email

ile <u>E</u> dit <u>Vi</u> ew Insert F <u>o</u> rmat Ioo	Recurring multipoint - Message (HTML)	<b>_</b> [	]		
The Tree Street (Treet					
Reply   Reply to All   🕞 Forward   (	∃ ⊫  ⊗  ♥  ≙  ≌ X   + - + A'				
rom: Cisco TelePPresence Manager		Sent: Wed 10/15/2008 6:44 AM			
o: Jake Avilan ic:					
Subject: TelePresence meeting - CONFIRMED - Recurring multipoint					
Your Cisco TelePresence meeting has been CONFIRMED					
Your Cisco Teleprese	ence meeting has been CON	FIRMED			
All occurrences of your meeting hav ound by clicking the following link. <u>Click Here</u> *	e been confirmed. Additional options and info	rmation about this TelePresence meeting may be			
<ul> <li>Additional Meeting Options</li> <li>Clicking the link above may allow: <ul> <li>Participate in a meeting with a</li> <li>Include video conferencing site</li> <li>Hide your meeting subject on</li> <li>Other options.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	tes, the TelePresence phone,				
Upcoming Occurrence D					
Subject:	Recurring multipoint				
Organizer:	Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)				
Start Time:	Monday, November 24, 2008 09:00.				
End Time:	Monday, November 24, 2008 09:30.	AM (America/Tijuana)			
Rooms: TelepresenceRoom31					
	TelepresenceRoom33 TelepresenceRoom32				
	-				
Multipoint Meeting:	TelepresenceRoom32 Bridgo Phono Numbor:				
Multipoint Meeting:	TelepresenceRoom32				

Email Section		Description	
Confirmation Statement (below the email banner)		This section confirms the meeting is properly scheduled and contains the link to the Meeting Details window.	
Upcor Note	ming Occurrence Details If this is a single instance meeting, rather than a recurring meeting this section is labeled "Meeting Details."	This section displays information about the scheduled meeting, including some options that are set in the Meeting Details window. In addition to the standard meeting information, this section contains the Multipoint Bridge Phone Number and the meeting's Conference ID.	
Email footer		The URL displayed at the bottom of the email is the same link to the Meeting Details window as the link in the Confirmation Statement above.	

#### Table 11-2 Multipoint Meeting Confirmation Email

### **Action Required Email**

Action Required emails may be sent to the Meeting Organizer to alert them of the following error conditions. The Action Required email is described in Table 11-3.

• **1205** - **Missing Required Rooms**: A second Cisco TelePresence room, or other participant has not been defined for the meeting.

This is the only type of error a Meeting Organizer can correct without administrative assistance. You can see an example of this email in Table 11-3. You or the Meeting Organizer can correct this error using the Meeting Details window, but the recommended way to resolve the error is to use the calendar client used to create the meeting.



- **e** This type of Action Required error can also be caused by a room not being deleted properly from a calendar server, for example Microsoft Exchange. This can occur if the Meeting Organizer schedules a meeting that includes a room in delegate mode. If the Meeting Organizer schedules the meeting and then deletes it before the room delegate accepts the invitation, this Action Required email is sent to the Meeting Organizer.
- **1211 Room Not Compatible**: One or more Cisco TelePresence rooms are running software that is incompatible with the Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch.
- **1212 Resource Not Available**: Not enough Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch resources are available to support the multipoint meeting.
- **1213 MCU Not Configured**: A Cisco TelePresence Multipoint Switch has not been configured for the network.
- **1217 CUVC Resource Not Available**: Insufficient Video Conferencing resources to setup multipoint meeting.

#### Figure 11-3 Action Required Email

rom: Cisco TelePPresence Manager	Sent: Thu 10/16/2008 1	12:50 AM
o: Jake Avilan		
c: ubject: TelePresence meeting - ACTION REC	QUIRED - Single room meeting	
V		
	nce meeting is NOT CONFIRMED	
The following error was discover	red:	
A second TelePresence room, or ot	ther participant, has not been defined for this meeting. (Error: 1205)	
To fix this problem please click the t	following link.	
<u>Click Here</u> *	-	
Additional Meeting Options		
Clicking the link above may allow:		
<ul> <li>Participate in a meeting with ot</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>Include video conferencing site</li> </ul>	35,	
<ul> <li>Hide your meeting subject on t</li> </ul>	the TelePresence phone,	
	the TelePresence phone,	
• Hide your meeting subject on t	_	
<ul> <li>Hide your meeting subject on t</li> <li>Other options.</li> </ul>	_	
Hide your meeting subject on t     Other options. Upcoming Occurrence De Subject:	etails	
Hide your meeting subject on t     Other options. Upcoming Occurrence De Subject: Organizer:	etails Single room meeting	
Hide your meeting subject on t     Other options. Upcoming Occurrence De Subject: Organizer: Start Time:	etails Single room meeting Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)	
Hide your meeting subject on t     Other options.  Upcoming Occurrence De Subject: Organizer: Start Time: End Time:	etails Single room meeting Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana)	
Hide your meeting subject on to Other options.  Upcoming Occurrence Description Subject: Organizer: Start Time: End Time: Rooms:	etails Single room meeting Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana)	
Hide your meeting subject on t     Other options.  Upcoming Occurrence De Subject: Organizer: Start Time: End Time: Rooms: Meeting Subject on Phone:	etails Single room meeting Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana) TelepresenceRoom32 Show	
Hide your meeting subject on the Other options.  Upcoming Occurrence Description  Subject: Organizer: Start Time: End Time: Rooms: Meeting Subject on Phone:  Occurrences With Errors	etails Single room meeting Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana) TelepresenceRoom32 Show	
Hide your meeting subject on the Other options.  Upcoming Occurrence Description  Subject: Organizer: Start Time: End Time: Rooms: Meeting Subject on Phone:  Occurrences With Errors	etails Single room meeting Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana) TelepresenceRoom32 Show	
Hide your meeting subject on t     Other options.  Upcoming Occurrence De Subject: Organizer: Start Time: End Time: Rooms: Meeting Subject on Phone:  12/16/2008 08:00 AM	etails Single room meeting Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana) Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana) TelepresenceRoom32 Show (first 50 shown) A second TelePresence room, or other participant, has not been defined for	
Hide your meeting subject on the Other options.  Upcoming Occurrence Defined Subject: Organizer: Start Time: End Time: End Time: Rooms: Meeting Subject on Phone:  Occurrences With Errors 12/16/2008 08:00 AM 01/20/2009 08:00 AM	etails         Single room meeting         Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)         Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana)         Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana)         TelepresenceRoom32         Show         State State         State State         Jake Second TelePresence room, or other participant, has not been defined for this meeting. (Error: 1205)         A second TelePresence room, or other participant, has not been defined for this meeting. (Error: 1205)         A second TelePresence room, or other participant, has not been defined for this meeting. (Error: 1205)         A second TelePresence room, or other participant, has not been defined for this meeting. (Error: 1205)         A second TelePresence room, or other participant, has not been defined for this meeting. (Error: 1205)         A second TelePresence room, or other participant, has not been defined for this meeting. (Error: 1205)	
<ul> <li>Hide your meeting subject on the Other options.</li> <li>Upcoming Occurrence De Subject:</li> <li>Organizer:</li> <li>Start Time:</li> <li>End Time:</li> <li>Rooms:</li> <li>Meeting Subject on Phone:</li> </ul>	etails         Single room meeting         Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)         Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (America/Tijuana)         Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana)         TelepresenceRoom32         Show         State State         State State         Jake State         Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (America/Tijuana)         TelepresenceRoom32         Show         State State         State <tr< td=""><td></td></tr<>	

Email Section		Description	
Confirmation Statement (below the email banner)		This section describes the error to be corrected before the meeting can be confirmed, and contains the link to the Meeting Details window. The error can usually be corrected using the Meeting Details window.	
Upcoming Occurrence Details		This section displays information about the scheduled meeting, including some options that	
Note	If this is a single instance meeting, rather than a recurring meeting this section is labeled "Meeting Details".	are set in the Meeting Details window.	
Occurrences with Errors		If this is a recurring meeting, all the instances that have an error are displayed in a list. Only some instances of a recurring meeting may be in error if the meeting organizer, using the Calendar client has edited some of the instances. Clicking the date/timestamp link takes you to the Meeting Details window for that meeting instance.	
		Only the first 50 meeting instances with errors are listed in the email, but all instances with errors are listed in the Meeting Details window.	
		<b>Note</b> The upcoming instance of a recurring meeting may not be one of the occurrences causing the error. When you log into Cisco TelePresence Manager from the upcoming meeting link, or any of the occurrences causing the link you will see all the occurrences of the meeting listed in the left-hand column. Click on any occurrence with an icon showing a red X to resolve the error.	
Email footer		The URL displayed at the bottom of the email is the same link to the Meeting Details window as the link in the Confirmation Statement above.	

#### Table 11-3 Action Required Email

# **Confirmation Meeting Details Window**

For description purposes the Meeting Details window is divided into the following sections:

- Meeting Details
- All Occurrences
- Occurrence Details Rooms Tab Options
- Occurrence Details Meeting Options
- Rooms Interoperability Options
- Rooms Intercompany Host Meeting Options

### **Meeting Details**

This web page allows you to specify options not available via your Calender Application and allows you to correct possible errors. Proceed to the Occurrence Details pane of this webpage to continue to set up options for your room configuration.Table 11-4 provides the Fields and Section Names with descriptions for this window.

### **Occurrence Details Pane**

Chapter 11

When the Meeting Details - Occurrence Details field is initially displayed you will see the following fields

- Rooms Tab
- Meetings Tab
- :

Figure 11-4 Occurrence Details - Rooms Tab Field

**CTS-MAN Emails and End-User Web UI** 

eeting Details	
	Cisco TelePresence calls by reviewing your meeting request and presetting the appropriate equipment to xperience with "One-Button-To-Push". This webpage allows you to specify options not available via your u to correct some errors.
Subject:	Recurring multipoint
Scheduler:	Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)
State:	Scheduled
l Occurrences	Occurrence Details
<2007 2009> > 11/24/2008 09:00 AM < 12/01/2008 09:00 AM 12/08/2008 09:00 AM 12/15/2008 09:00 AM	Scheduled Start Time :       Monday, November 24, 2008 09:00 AM (PST8PDT)         Scheduled End Time :       Monday, November 24, 2008 09:30 AM (PST8PDT)         Rooms Meeting Options       Cisco TelePresence Rooms (3 rooms )
12/22/2008 09:00 AM	TelepresenceRoom31
	TelepresenceRoom33
12/29/2008 09:00 AM	
12/29/2008 09:00 AM	TelepresenceRoom32
12/29/2008 09:00 AM	TelepresenceRoom32           Intercompany
12/29/2008 09:00 AM	
12/29/2008 09:00 AM	Intercompany Does this conference include TelePresence rooms from another company? O Yes

#### Table 11-4Meeting Details window

Field or Section Name	Description
Subject	The person scheduling the meeting enters the information in the Subject field.
Scheduler	This field displays the name and email address of the person scheduling the meeting.

Field or Section Name	Description	
All Occurrences	This column lists all the occurrences of your recurring meeting. Each meeting instance is a link. Meeting icons showing a red X refer to those meeting instances with errors. Click the link to show the meeting details for that instance.	
Scheduled Start Time	Displays the start date and time of the meeting.	
Schedule End Time	Displays the end date and time of the meeting.	
Cisco TelePresence Rooms	Displays the list of rooms included in the meeting.	
IntercompanyIf this is an Intercompany Cisco TelePresence meeting click Yes to display the Inter options. See sections Intercompany Host Meeting Options and Intercompany Part Meeting Options for more information.		
	<b>Note</b> An Intercompany meeting cannot include any Interop devices.	
Interoperability with Video Conferencing	leo If this meeting includes video conferencing endpoints click Yes to display the Interop options.	

#### Table 11-4 Meeting Details window (continued)

### **Meeting Options Tab**

Clicking the Occurrence Details - Meeting Options tab in the Meeting Details window displays the following selectible fields:

- Meeting Subject on Phone Show or Hide
- Switching Mode: Auto-Assign, Speaker, or Room

Table 11-5 describes these fields.

#### Figure 11-5 Occurrence Details - Meeting Options Tab

Cisco TelePresence Manager avilan   Logout   Preferences   Help   About				
Meeting Details				
	ce with "One-Button-To-Push". This webpage al	quest and presetting the appropriate equipment to lows you to specify options not available via your		
Subject:	Recurring multipoint			
Scheduler:	Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)			
State:	Scheduled			
All Occurrences	Occurrence Details			
ि> 11/24/2008 09:00 AM <		nday, November 24, 2008 09:00 AM (PST8PDT) nday, November 24, 2008 09:30 AM (PST8PDT)		
I2/01/2008 09:00 AM         Rooms         Meeting Options           12/08/2008 09:00 AM				
No 12/15/2008 09:00 AM	Meeting Subject on Phone :	⊙ Show C Hide		
I2/22/2008 09:00 AM           I2/22/2008 09:00 AM	Switching Mode :	● Auto-Assign ○ Speaker ○ Room		
CO 12/29/2006 09:00 AM	* Required Fields	Apply Reset		

Table 11-5	Meeting	Options	Tab
------------	---------	---------	-----

Field or Section Name	Description	
Meeting Subject on Phone	Choose Hide if you don't want the meeting subject to be displayed on the Cisco TelePresence room phone.	
	<b>Note</b> This options is displayed in the Upcoming Occurrence Details section of the Confirmation email.	
Switching Mode	The Switching Mode can be either 'Speaker' or 'Room'. Switching Mode only affects CTS-3000 and CTS-3200 endpoints. If the Switching Mode is set to 'Room' all the participant displays of the endpoint are switched each time the meeting participant who is speaking changes to a meeting participant at a different endpoint. If the Switching Mode is set to 'Speaker' only the corresponding participant display (left, center, or right) is switched; the remaining participant displays are not switched. Using the 'Speaker' switching mode provides the ability to view up to three different remote endpoints at the same time.	
	If you choose Auto-Assign, switching mode is determined by the default CTMS policy. The default CTMS policy is configured on the System Configuration > Policy Management page.	

### **Interoperability Options**

Clicking the Occurrence Details - Room Options tab - Interoperability selection in the Meeting Details window displays the following selectible fields:

• Interoperability with Video Conferencing

If responding Yes, this allows you to set up the number of endpoints for this meeting.

Table 11-6 describes these fields.

#### Figure 11-6 Interoperability Options

cisco Cisco TelePres	ence Manager	<b>avilan  </b> Logout   Preferences   Help   Abou	
Meeting Details			
	Cisco TelePresence calls by reviewing your meeting request and presetting the appro Ish". This webpage allows you to specify options not available via your calendar appl		
Subject:	Recurring multipoint		
Scheduler:	Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)		
State:	Scheduled		
All Occurrences	Occurrence Details		
<2007 <b>2009&gt;</b>	Scheduled Start Time : Monday, November 24, 2008 09:0	0 AM (PST8PDT)	
> 11/24/2008 09:00 AM <			
0 12/01/2008 09:00 AM	Rooms Meeting Options		
212/08/2008 09:00 AM 212/15/2008 09:00 AM Cisco TelePresence Rooms (3 rooms )			
0 12/13/2008 09:00 AM	TelepresenceRoom31		
0 12/29/2008 09:00 AM	TelepresenceRoom31		
	TelepresenceRoom32		
	Intercompany		
	Intercompany is not permitted when Video Conferencing is in use.		
	Interoperability with Video Conferencing		
	Does this meeting include Video Conferencing ?	€Yes CNo	
	How many Video Conferencing end points will join this meeting ?	(2-3)	
	Video Conference Access Number	Not Available	
	* Required Fields	Apply Reset	

#### Table 11-6Interoperability Options

Field Name	Description
How many Video Conferencing endpoints will join this meeting?	Enter the number of video conferencing devices that will participate in the meeting.
Video Conference Access Number	

### **Intercompany Host Meeting Options**

#### Figure 11-7 Intercompany Host Meeting Options

cisco TelePresen	ce Manager av	<b>ilan</b>   Logout   Preferences   Help   Abou
Meeting Details		
	DelePresence calls by reviewing your meeting request and presetting the appropriate e . This webpage allows you to specify options not available via your calendar application a	
Subject:	Recurring multipoint	
Scheduler:	Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)	
State:	Scheduled	
All Occurrences	Occurrence Details	
<2007 2009>	Scheduled Start Time : Monday, November 24, 2008 09:00 AM (P:	ST8PDT)
II/24/2008 09:00 AM <	Scheduled End Time : Monday, November 24, 2008 09:30 AM (P:	
3 12/01/2008 09:00 AM	Rooms Meeting Options	
3 12/08/2008 09:00 AM	Cisco TelePresence Rooms (3 rooms )	
I2/15/2008 09:00 AM I2/22/2008 09:00 AM	Telepresence Rooms (3 rooms )	
3 12/29/2008 09:00 AM	TelepresenceRoom33	
	TelepresenceRoom32	
	Intercompany	
	Does this conference include TelePresence rooms from another company?	⊙ Yes C No
	Which company will host the TelePresence mulitpoint bridge?	C Another Company . Our Company
	Enter the sum of TelePresence Resources required by all other companies	*
	participating in this meeting :	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Interoperability with Video Conferencing	
	Video Conferencing is not permitted when Intercompany is in use.	
	* Required Fields	Apply Reset

#### Table 11-7 Intercompany Host Meeting Options

Field Name	Description
Enter the sum of Cisco TelePresence resources required by all other companies.	If your company is hosting an Intercompany Cisco TelePresence meeting you need to specify the resources required to include all the participating companies. The sum of the resources needed can be determined by adding the values below for each CTS endpoint participating in the meeting:
	CTS-500 = 1 resource
	CTS-1000 = 1 resource CTS-3000 = 3 resources
	CTS-3200 = 3 resources

### **Intercompany Participant Meeting Options**

If another company is considered the Intercompany Cisco TelePresence meeting host you need to configure your side of the meeting as a participant. You'll need obtain the Dial-in Number and the Conference ID from your CTS-Manager Administrator or from the Host meeting organizer.



cisco TelePresenc	e Manager av	<b>ilan</b>   Logout   Preferences   Help   Abou				
Meeting Details						
	TelePresence calls by reviewing your meeting request and presetting the appropriate e This webpage allows you to specify options not available via your calendar application .					
Subject: Scheduler:	Recurring multipoint Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)					
State:	Scheduled					
All Occurrences	Occurrence Details					
<pre>&lt;2007 2009&gt; </pre> 11/24/2008 09:00 AM <  12/01/2008 09:00 AM  12/08/2008 09:00 AM	Scheduled Start Time :     Monday, November 24, 2008 09:00 AM (PST8PDT)       Scheduled End Time :     Monday, November 24, 2008 09:30 AM (PST8PDT)       Rooms     Meeting Options					
<ul> <li>12/15/2008 09:00 AM</li> <li>12/22/2008 09:00 AM</li> <li>12/29/2008 09:00 AM</li> </ul>	12/15/2008 09:00 AM         Cisco TelePresence Rooms (3 rooms )           12/22/2008 09:00 AM         TelepresenceRoom31					
	TelepresenceRoom32 Intercompany Does this conference include TelePresence rooms from another company?	© Yes C No				
	Which company will host the TelePresence mulitpoint bridge? Enter information provided by the meeting host :	Another Company C Our Company				
	Multipoint Dial-in Number Intercompany Conference ID	*				
	Interoperability with Video Conferencing Video Conferencing is not permitted when Intercompany is in use.					
	* Required Fields	Apply Reset				

Table 11-8	Intercompa	nv Particinant	Meeting Options
	mercompa	πιγ Γαιτισιραπι	meeting Options

Field Name	Description
Multipoint Dial-in Number	This is the phone number your Cisco TelePresence room phone will call to join the meeting. This number is provided by the meeting Host's CTMS or your Service Provider's CTMS.
Conference ID	The Conference ID is generated by the Host's CTMS or your Service Provider's CTMS.

### **Action Required - Meeting Details Window**

If you have included only one Cisco TelePresence room in a scheduled meeting you need to use the Meeting Details window to supply a phone number. If you mistakenly included only one Cisco TelePresence room the meeting organizer should use the Calendar client to add additional rooms.

#### Figure 11-9 Meeting Details Window

ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp					
🔾 Back 🕶 🕥 🛩 🗷 😰 🏠 🔎 Search 👷 Favorites  😥 🚽 🔛 🛄					
Address Address Address Address Address Address Address	ler/loginAction.do;jsessionid=65A46A5FD85D1237AA78FE11BCCC8AE0	💌 🄁 Go 🛛 Links			
cisco Cisco TelePresen	<mark>ce Manager avilan</mark>   Logo	out   Preferences   Help   About			
Meeting Details					
	DelePresence calls by reviewing your meeting request and presetting the appropriate equip tton-To-Push". This webpage allows you to specify options not available via your calendar ap	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
Subject:	Single room meeting				
Scheduler:	Jake Avilan (avilan@srdev.com)				
State:	ERROR: Only one Cisco TelePresence room is scheduled for this meeting. E calendaring client or provide a number to dial .	Either add more rooms using your			
All Occurrences	Occurrence Details				
<2007 2009>	cheduled Start Time : Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:00 AM (PST8PD	т)			
	cheduled End Time : Tuesday, November 25, 2008 08:30 AM (PST8PD	т)			
➡ 12/02/2008 08:00 AM ➡ 12/09/2008 08:00 AM	Rooms Meeting Options				
12/16/2008 08:00 AM	Cisco TelePresence Rooms (1 rooms )				
🕵 12/23/2008 08:00 AM	TelepresenceRoom32				
🖏 12/30/2008 08:00 AM	Number to Dial	*			
	Intercompany				
	Does this conference include TelePresence rooms from another company? C Yes C No				
	Interoperability with Video Conferencing	C			
	Does this meeting include Video Conferencing ?	C Yes 🖲 No			
	* Required Fields				

#### Table 11-9 Meeting Details - Phone Number Dial

Field Name Description	
Number to Dial	Enter the phone number to be dialed to establish a connection from the Cisco TelePresence
	room phone.





# Supported MIBs for Cisco TelePresence Manager

Revised: June 11, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

### **Contents**

- Introduction, page 12-2
- MIB Support, page 12-2

# Introduction

The following section provides the list of MIBs that are supported in the Cisco TelePresence Manager..

# **MIB** Support

The following MIBs are supported by CTS-Manager. MIBs only partially supported list their capability files.

#### Table 12-1 CTS-Manager Supported MIBs

MIB	Support	Capability Location
CISCO-CDP-MIB	Partially	ftp://ftpeng.cisco.com/pub/mibs/v2/CIS CO-CDP-CAPABILITYmy
CISCO-SYSLOG-MB	Partially	ftp://ftpeng.cisco.com/pub/mibs/v2/CISCO- SYSLOG-CAPABILITYmy
IF-MIB	Partially	ftp://ftpeng.cisco.com/pub/mibs/v2/CISCO-I F-CAPABLITYmy
IP-MIB(v2)	Partially	ftp://ftpeng.cisco.com/pub/mibs/v2/CISCO-I P-CAPABLITYmy
RFC1213-MIB	Fully	
SNMPv2-MIB	Fully	
TCP-MIB	Partially	ftp://ftpeng.cisco.com/pub/mibs/v2/CISCO- TCP-STD-CAPABILITYmy
UDP-MIB	Fully	
SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB	Fully	
SNMP-MPD-MIB	Fully	
SNMP-VACM-MIB (SNMP-VIEW-BASED-ACM- MIB	Fully	
SNMP-NOTIFICATION-MIB	Fully	
SNMP-TARGET-MIB	Fully	
SNMP-USER-BASED-SM-MIB	Fully	
HOST-RESOURCE-MIB	Fully	





# **Troubleshooting Cisco TelePresence Manager**

Revised: June 11, 2009, OL-13673-04 First Published: November 27, 2006

### **Contents**

- Introduction, page 13-2
- Log Files, page 13-3
  - Services, page 13-4
  - TelePresence Engine, page 13-4
  - Download All Files, page 13-5
- Scheduled Meeting and Room Issues, page 13-5
- IP Phone User Interface Issues, page 13-12
- Cisco TelePresence Manager Database Issues, page 13-13
- Multipoint Conference Unit (MCU) Issues, page 13-13
- Calendar Server and LDAP Interface Issues, page 13-14
  - LDAP Server Issues, page 13-15
  - Microsoft Exchange Calendar Server Issues, page 13-15
  - IBM Domino Calendar Server Issues, page 13-18
- Web Browser Error Messages, page 13-20
  - JavaScript Error Message, page 13-20
  - Safe ActiveX Checking Message, page 13-20
- System Error Messages, page 13-21

# Introduction

Troubleshooting meeting connections and network problems is one of the more important responsibilities of the Cisco TelePresence system administrator. When a problem is detected, you must collect system errors and logs files so they can be analyzed for prompt resolution. Figure 13-1 shows the links available to assist you with these troubleshooting tasks.



cisco Cisco TelePi	resence Manager admin   Log
	resence Manager       admin       Log         Troubleshooting       Image: Comparison of the provided addition of the provided additing additing addition of the provided additing addition
Log Files	

# **System Log**

Choose the System Log window to see a list of system messages. You can filter the list by starting and ending dates and message type All, Fatal, Severe, Moderate, Warning, and Info, as follows:

- Use the Calendar icon to choose dates, or type the dates in the **Start On** and **End On** fields using the MM/DD/YYYY date format.
- Click **Filter** to generate the list.

#### Figure 13-2 System Log Window

Troub	Troubleshooting > System Log							
Syste	:m Log							
Star	t on: 12/8/2008	<b>•••••</b>	End on:	12/8/2008		Type: All	*	Filter
						Showin	g 1 - 1 of	1 records
	Time stamp (+) 🔻	Туре	ID 🔻	Module 🔻		Message		
0	<u>12/08/2008 11:18 AM</u>	SEVERE	3801	MultipointMgr	Failed to authent	iicate with MCU 'tsbı	J-ctm17'.	
First	<pre></pre>	Last Ro	ws Per Page	:: 10 🗸			D	etails

(+) All times are shown in time zone America/Los\_Angeles (GMT -8.0)

Table 13-1 lists the error information provided by the system.

Table 13-1	System Error Report
------------	---------------------

Field	Description
Timestamp	Date and time the message was logged. You can sort the messages in ascending or descending order by the time stamp.
Туре	Message type.
ID	Message identification number. You can sort the reports in ascending or descending order by ID.
Module	Component within CTS-Manager that generated the error.
Message	Explanation of problem detected. Move your mouse pointer over a message field to see a complete description.

# **Log Files**

At the Log Files window, you can set the level for logging system errors from the following services that contribute messages:

#### Figure 13-3 Log File Window

Services				
Discovery:		ERROR 🛩		
Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange):		ERROR V		
Room Phone UI:		ERROR V		
Admin UI:		ERROR 🛩		
Multipoint Conference:		ERROR V		
elePresence Engine				
Service Providers:		ERROR 💌		
Data Access Layer:		ERROR 🛩		
Interface:		ERROR V		
g Files			_	Apply Re
	~		_	
	<b>v</b>		Showing	Filte
g Files Gervice: All Filename 🔻	Service	Last Modified (+) 🔻		Apply Re Filte 1 - 10 of 34 rec ize (KB)
Service: All Filename scoveryMgr itapi01.log	Service	10/09/2008 09:43 AM	0.0	Filte
Service: All Filename  SecoveryMgr_itapi01.log ilendarMgr.log.9	Service Discovery Room Phone UI	10/09/2008 09:43 AM 10/14/2008 06:24 AM	0.0 5121.94	Filte
Service: All Filename  SecoveryMgr_itapi01.log IlendarMgr.log.9 IlendarMgr.log.8	Service Discovery Room Phone UI Room Phone UI	10/09/2008 09:43 AM 10/14/2008 06:24 AM 10/15/2008 04:17 PM	0.0 5121.94 5123.95	Filte
Service: All Filename  Service: All Filename  SecoveryMgr_itapi01.log IlendarMgr.log.9 IlendarMgr.log.8 IlendarMgr.log.7	Service Discovery Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI	10/09/2008 09:43 AM 10/14/2008 06:24 AM 10/15/2008 04:17 PM 10/16/2008 09:50 PM	0.0 5121.94 5123.95 5124.0	Filte
Service: All Filename  Service: All Filename  SecveryMgr_itapi01.log IendarMgr.log.9 IendarMgr.log.8 IendarMgr.log.7 IendarMgr.log.6	Service Discovery Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI	10/09/2008 09:43 AM 10/14/2008 06:24 AM 10/15/2008 04:17 PM 10/16/2008 09:50 PM 10/18/2008 03:08 AM	0.0 5121.94 5123.95 5124.0 5122.41	Filte
Service: All Filename  Filename  ScoveryMgr_itapi01.log IlendarMgr.log.9 IlendarMgr.log.8 IlendarMgr.log.7 IlendarMgr.log.6 IlendarMgr.log.5	Service Discovery Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI	10/09/2008 09:43 AM 10/14/2008 06:24 AM 10/15/2008 04:17 PM 10/16/2008 09:50 PM 10/18/2008 03:08 AM 10/19/2008 08:42 AM	0.0 5121.94 5123.95 5124.0 5122.41 5124.0	Filte
Service: All Filename  Filename  SecoveryMgr_itapi01.log IlendarMgr.log.9 IlendarMgr.log.8 IlendarMgr.log.7 IlendarMgr.log.6 IlendarMgr.log.5 IlendarMgr.log.4	Service Discovery Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI	10/09/2008 09:43 AM 10/14/2008 06:24 AM 10/15/2008 04:17 PM 10/16/2008 09:50 PM 10/18/2008 03:08 AM 10/19/2008 08:42 AM 10/20/2008 02:15 PM	0.0 5121.94 5123.95 5124.0 5122.41 5124.0 5124.0 5124.0	Filte
Service: All	Service Discovery Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI Room Phone UI	10/09/2008 09:43 AM 10/14/2008 06:24 AM 10/15/2008 04:17 PM 10/16/2008 09:50 PM 10/18/2008 03:08 AM 10/19/2008 08:42 AM	0.0 5121.94 5123.95 5124.0 5122.41 5124.0	Filte

(+) All times are shown in time zone America/Los\_Angeles (GMT -8.0)

#### Services

- Discovery Service
- Calendar Service
- Room Phone UI Service
- Admin UI Service
- Multipoint Conference

#### **TelePresence Engine**

- Service Providers
- Data Access Layer

• Interface

You can set the message types from these services to the following levels:

- **DEBUG**—Detailed errors and information messages.
- ERROR—Errors that are likely to terminate system activity.
- FATAL—Errors that will automatically terminate system activity.



**Note** The default logging level is typically set to **ERROR**. There may be times when Cisco technical personnel will instruct you to modify the logging level for one or more of the services, to help them diagnose a problem. Be sure to reset the logging level immediately after the problem has been resolved, or else disk space may become filled with messages and negatively impact system performance.

Once you have made your logging level choices for each service:

• Click Apply to register new or modified settings, or click Reset to restore the original settings.

You can generate a list of specific error types.

- From the Service drop-down list, choose one of the following to specify the type of errors to display:
  - All
  - Discovery
  - Groupware Adapter
  - Room Phone UI
  - Admin UI
  - Multipoint Connection
  - TelePresence Engine
- Click **Filter** to generate the list.

Log files are named with a .log extension. The log filename provides a link to the contents of the error log file. This window also shows the date the file was last modified and the size of the log file. The lists can be sorted by filename and time last modified.

• To update the error log, click the **Refresh** button.

### **Download All Files**

Use the Download All button to collect all log data for Cisco technical support personnel when submitting a case for problem solution. The data is automatically compressed in a file that can be sent via email.

### **Scheduled Meeting and Room Issues**

Meeting information is retrieved via processing room notifications from a Microsoft Exchange or an IBM Domino Calendar server. A notification is generated when a meeting is added, modified, or deleted.

The Cisco TelePresence Manager database is periodically synchronized with the Calendar server to retrieve and maintain room schedules. Synchronization resolves any problems that might have occurred when Exchange or Domino connectivity was not available and notifications were not received. If required, you can also trigger a manual synchronization of the room meeting schedule using the Re-sync Operation in the Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino window.

Meeting information is stored in the database, and the Room Phone UI service is notified when it is time to send the meeting schedule to the phone user interface.

The Rooms window displays the room status as "In Use" when a call is placed. The Scheduled Meeting window displays meetings as "In Progress" or "Completed" reflecting the actual state of the call.

If the concierge is called, this condition will be reflected in the Room UI view and Scheduled Meeting view as "Needs Help".

Refer to troubleshooting information in Table 13-2 to solve common problems that prevent Cisco TelePresence meetings from being scheduled correctly.

 Table 13-2
 Scheduled Meeting and Room Issues

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Detailed view of Meetings reports that the Cisco TelePresence meeting is "Pending for more information from Exchange".	<ul> <li>This message appears when one of the two following conditions occurs:</li> <li>When Cisco TelePresence Manager receives notice of an event, it waits 30 seconds to see if any further event details are forthcoming from Microsoft Exchange and then validates the meeting.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Wait a few moments and view Meetings status again to see if the meeting has been validated.</li> <li>Advise the room delegate to respond to meeting e-mail notification.</li> </ul>
	• If the room is in manual-accept mode and the room's delegate has accepted a meeting only tentatively or has not responded to meeting e-mail notification	
The meeting organizer receives no e-mail to confirm the meeting is	This problem occurs when a room is not in auto-accept mode.	Make sure reserved rooms are in auto-accept mode.
scheduled.		If a room is in manual-accept mode, the meeting invitation must be accepted by the room's delegate using Microsoft Outlook or Lotus Notes.
Scheduled Meetings do not show the	Connectivity between the	Check the Rooms window for status.
status "In Progress", or Rooms do not show "In Use" when a call is placed.	Cisco TelePresence system and CTS-Manager is lost.	The SSH username and password should be configured for the Cisco TelePresence system. See the Unified CM Installation Guide for Cisco TelePresence for more help.
		Verify that the Calendar service is running on the Cisco TelePresence system.

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Room status indicates an error condition.	<ul> <li>Place your mouse over the status to see the error described in a tooltip. This problem can occur when:</li> <li>The phone associated with the Cisco</li> </ul>	Cisco TelePresence IP phone associated with participating rooms must be added to the CTS-Manager Application User Profile.
	TelePresence meeting room is not included in Cisco TelePresence Manager application user profile.	Update the CTS-Manager Application User Profile with correct room data. Check the Rooms window for status.
	• The phone associated with the Cisco TelePresence meeting room is not registered with the Unified CM.	Check the IP connectivity between the equipment and CTS-Manager.
	• More than one Cisco TelePresence phone could be configured with the same room name.	Missing Secure Shell username and password for the Cisco TelePresence IP phone should be configured in the Unified CM configuration.
A recurring meeting is not listed in the Scheduled Meetings window	The first occurrence of the meeting is scheduled more than one year in the past.	Reschedule the meeting so that the start date for the recurring meeting is less than one year in the past.
Two instances of the same meeting (either a single meeting or an instance of a recurring meeting) are listed in the Scheduled Meetings window.	The date or time of the meeting was modified after the start time of the meeting, but before the meeting was initiated or the before the meeting end time has occurred.	This is expected behavior. The meeting instance with the new start date or start time is treated as a new meeting.
A recurring point-to-point meeting listed in the Scheduled Meetings window displays an Error status.	The rooms included in the meeting are in manual-accept mode (delegates must accept meeting invitations).	• In Microsoft Exchange, select the checkbox for the room(s) missing from the scheduled meeting and Re-sync.
OR A recurring multipoint meeting is listed in the Scheduled Meetings window as a point-to-point meeting (only two rooms are scheduled).	If the recurring meeting is a point-to-point meeting (R1 & R2) and a room delegate has declined one instance	<ul> <li>In IBM Domino, click Re-sync to re-sync the database.</li> </ul>
	(R1), all meeting instances show only one room scheduled.	
	If the recurring meeting is a multi-point meeting (R1, R2, & R3) and a room delegate has declined one instance (R1), all meeting instances show only two rooms scheduled (R2 & R3).	

#### Table 13-2 Scheduled Meeting and Room Issues (continued)

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Room Status reports a Subscription or Synchronization error with Microsoft Exchange	A Discovery operation attempted to sync to a newly added Room calendar before even one meeting was added to the calendar.	A Room calendar must contain at least one scheduled meeting in order for Cisco TelePresence Manager to successfully subscribe and sync.
		To remove the error status:
		1. Schedule at least one meeting on the Room calendar.
		<ol> <li>From the System Configuration &gt; Microsoft Exchange window, select the room showing the subscription error and click <b>Re-sync</b>.</li> </ol>
		<ol> <li>From the Support &gt; Rooms Summary tab, select the room showing the Exchange subscription or sync error (on the Status tab), and click Update Schedule.</li> </ol>
Recurring or single meeting with only one room is displayed with an Error	If a meeting organizer deletes a meeting that was	This is expected behavior. All rooms calendars are available for scheduled
status after meeting start time has	<b>1.</b> not launched,	meetings.
passed.	<ol> <li>after the meeting start time</li> </ol>	
	all but one rooms are removed from the scheduled meeting and the meeting is set to an Error status.	
	If the meeting was a recurring meeting and the meeting series was deleted after the first instance of the meeting was	
	1. not launched,	
	2. after the 1st meeting instance start time	
	all but one rooms are removed from the scheduled meeting and the meeting is set to an Error status.	
Meeting Confirmation email refers to upcoming meeting instance, not to meeting instance whose details were updated.	The <b>Send Email</b> button in the Meeting Details window is available to any user (Concierge or Administrator) logging into Cisco TelePresence Manager. If you make changes to a future instance of a recurring meeting and click <b>Send</b> <b>Email</b> , the confirmation email sent to the Meeting Organizer refers to the upcoming meeting and not to the future instance that was changed.	The Meeting Organizer must click the link in the Confirmation email to open the Meeting Details window and select the future meeting instance to see the changes made.

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Meeting instances in a recurring meeting are not listed in the Action Required emails.	Action Required emails list only the first 50 instances of a recurring meeting.	To view additional instances of a recurring meeting, the Meeting Organizer must click the link in the Action Required email and display the Meeting Details window.
A scheduled meeting is not listed in the Scheduled Meetings window. (For IBM Domino deployment.)	The date of a scheduled meeting must fall between two days prior to the current date and two calendar years in the future ( -2 days — +12 months), in order for Cisco TelePresence Manager to sync the meeting between the Domino database and the Cisco TelePresence Manager database. <b>Note</b> If a meeting is scheduled while Cisco TelePresence Manager is down, and more than two days pass before CTS-Manager is restarted, the meeting will not be sync'd and must be rescheduled.	<ul> <li>Verify the rooms are registered properly in the System Configuration &gt; IBM Domino window. The room name appearing in the Associated Rooms column must exactly match the room names added to the profile in Unified CM.</li> <li>Note In Cisco Unified CM the Product Specific Configuration Layout window refers to "Room Name (from Exchange)". This is the room name that must match the room name in the Domino server database in order for CTS-Manager to successfully sync.</li> </ul>
A deleted meeting still appears in CTS-Manager. (For IBM Domino deployment.)	The CTS-Manager database is set to delete scheduled meetings according to the (Polling Interval * 3). The Polling Interval is set in the IBM Domino window. If the scheduled meeting does not fall within two days prior to the current date and two calendar years in the future (-2 days — +12 months), the meeting is not deleted from the CTS-Manager database.	Please wait the prescribed amount of time to ensure the meeting is deleted.
Scheduled meetings show an error. OR New meetings are not appearing in the Scheduled Meetings window.	After the Microsoft Exchange server is down, CTS-Manager does not regain a connection.	<ul> <li>Re-sync the rooms with scheduled meeting errors or missing meetings. After the room re-sync Exchange may still display an error status.</li> <li>This can be fixed by either:</li> <li>waiting for CTS-Manager to renew subscription to the affected rooms (occurs every 55 minutes) OR</li> <li>restarting the CTS-Manager server.</li> </ul>
New meetings are not processed by CTS-Manager after a software upgrade.	The Domino or Exchange server was down during the upgrade and the initialization process did not complete properly.	<ul> <li>Initiate Discovery manually to initialize the processes.</li> <li>OR</li> <li>Restart CTS-Manager</li> </ul>

#### Table 13-2 Scheduled Meeting and Room Issues (continued)

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
An Action Required email does not list the error for all instances of a recurring meeting (Domino Calendar Server issue).	If a recurring meeting is created with two endpoints, and is then modified by removing one endpoint for all meeting instances, the Action Required email does not list out all the meeting instances.	This is expected behavior. The meeting organizer should modify the meeting series using Lotus Notes and add a second Cisco TelePresence room.
A deleted meeting still appears in the Scheduled Meetings window.	The meeting was deleted from the Exchange room calendar, but the meeting is not deleted in CTS-Manager. This can happen if room reservations are managed using Outlook Auto Accept.	Delete the meeting from the room calendar. Refer to Microsoft Knowledge Base article 280854 for more information.
A room shows a sync error with a calendar server.	<ol> <li>A new room with no scheduled meetings is included in a multipoint recurring meeting.</li> <li>Meeting goes into error state, because of reduced MCU resources.</li> <li>The meeting series is deleted through Outlook.</li> <li>The new room now has a 'one room' meeting error.</li> <li>Exchange returns '0' meetings for the new room during daily maintenance, but the CTS-Manager database still contains a meeting for the room.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>Perform on of the following procedures to correct the room sync error:</li> <li>Create a meeting using this room (P2P, multipoint, single or recurring). The next daily maintenance corrects the sync error.</li> <li>Perform a manual sync for the room.</li> </ul>
Scheduled meeting is in error state for a new room.	<ul> <li>A new room is included in two separate meetings and one of the meetings is deleted.</li> <li>Note In this scenario a Clarification email may be sent to the meeting organizer for a 'missing rooms' issue. The email should not have been sent.</li> <li>If the meeting organizer is using OWA</li> </ul>	Re-sync the room with Exchange.
meeting is modified to include only one room.	and deletes one of two rooms for a scheduled meeting no clarification email is sent.	article 916160 for more information.
Only one instance of a yearly recurring meeting is seen in CTS-Manager.	The meeting organizer did not specify an end date.	Update meeting to include an end date.
Two different meetings appear as scheduled for the same time slot.	One of the meeting's scheduled had its "Show time as" attribute set to "free".	Do not set the "Show time as" attribute to "free". Reschedule the meeting.

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Both past and present scheduled meetings are updated when enabling interoperability.	When enabling interoperability for a scheduled meeting and the meeting organizer chooses "all future occurrences", all past and present meeting instances have interop enabled.	This is standard functionality.
Deleted scheduled meetings still appear in CTS-Manager.	If all meetings for a room are deleted CTS-Manager is not updated to reflect the meeting deletions in Exchange.	Create a new scheduled meeting for the room to re-sync CTS-Manager and Exchange.
Meetings scheduled past a one year duration only show the first year of scheduled meetings.	CTS-Manager only displays the first 365 days of any scheduled meeting.	Meetings scheduled prior to CTS-Manager 1.4 will continue to display meeting dates past a 365 day window. Meetings scheduled using CTS-Manager 1.4 only display meeting dates for the first 365 days.
CTS-Manager shows extra meeting instances for some recurring meetings.	An additional room, in proxy mode is added to an existing recurring meeting by the Meeting Organizer, who then makes additional changes to the series. The room delegate then accepts the invite to the meeting using an out-of-date meeting invitation.	Make sure the room delegate uses the latest meeting invitation when accepting the invitation.
A meeting organizer may receive two emails from CTS-Manager for a non-recurring multipoint meeting.		Use AAA for acceptance.
A meeting state is displayed as complete even if some participants remain active.	Meetings scheduled between endpoints supporting secure mode (earlier than 1.5) and 1.5 endpoints, that have been modified to be an intercompany meeting may not end the call properly for 1.5 endpoints.	Manually end the call from each version 1.5 endpoint.
After changing the hostname or IP address of Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Unified CM) with same configuration in CTS Manager, the custom meeting data is lost.	<ol> <li>Cisco Unified CM's IP address is changed so that the IP address in CTS Manager needs to be changed.</li> <li>Cisco Unified CM is restored on a different server and now CTS Manager is configured with new Cisco Unified CM IP address.</li> </ol>	Change Cisco Unified CM to use the previous configuration; restore using the CTS Manager backup so that all the custom changes to the meetings are restored.
	In such cases, even though there is no change in the CTS conference rooms, CTS Manager deletes all rooms and meetings, adds new rooms, and syncs again with the Exchange/Domino. This causes all custom data to be lost.	

#### Table 13-2 Scheduled Meeting and Room Issues (continued)

# **IP Phone User Interface Issues**

Once a scheduled Cisco TelePresence meeting has been confirmed by participating rooms in Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino, it should be listed on the IP phone user interface in less than three minutes. Use Table 13-3 to troubleshoot problems between scheduled meetings and the phone user interface.

Table 13-3IP Phone User Interface Issues

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
The Cisco TelePresence IP phone displays the standard idle screen instead of the meeting list managed by CTS-Manager.	<ul> <li>This problem can occur when:</li> <li>There is no connectivity between the Cisco TelePresence IP phone and Cisco TelePresence Manager.</li> <li>The scheduled meeting is outside the user-specified time window.</li> <li>The Secure Shell username and password for the Cisco TelePresence IP phone in the Unified CM configuration are missing.</li> <li>CTS-Manager has not sent required information to the Cisco TelePresence IP phone.</li> <li>The network is not properly</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Check the dashboard for phone status.</li> <li>Only meetings within the user-specified time window are displayed on the phone user interface. The administrator can configure the number of days displayed.</li> <li>Verify that the Calendar service is running in the Cisco TelePresence system.</li> </ul>
A scheduled meeting does not appear on the Cisco TelePresence phone user interface.	<ul> <li>configured or is down.</li> <li>The room name configured in Unified CM does not match the actual room name (e-mail alias) configured in the Directory Server.</li> <li>Duplicate room names are configured.</li> <li>Cisco TelePresence IP phone associated with participating rooms has not been added to the CTS-Manager Application User Profile.</li> <li>The Exchange or Domino user account for CTS-Manager does not have permission to retrieve calendar data.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The room name must exactly match the name (e-mail alias) provided in the Directory Server.</li> <li>Remove duplicate room names configured in Unified CM.</li> <li>Update the CTS-Manager Application User Profile with correct room data.</li> <li>Change the CTS-Manager user account for Exchange or Domino so it has permissions to retrieve (read) room and calendar data.</li> </ul>
A proposed meeting was deleted from Microsoft Outlook, but it still appears on the Cisco TelePresence phone user interface.	<ul> <li>This problem can occur when:</li> <li>Outlook Web Access (OWA) is used to schedule meetings because OWA does not receive delete updates.</li> <li>CTS-Manager is not synchronized with the Exchange database.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Log into Microsoft Outlook and use that application to delete the meeting.</li> <li>Use the Re-Sync Operations under Microsoft Exchange to resynchronize the database and meeting schedule.</li> </ul>
## **Cisco TelePresence Manager Database Issues**

Status for database services is displayed on the Dashboard window.

You can verify the CTS-Manager database status using the following CLI command:

#### utils service list

The result should indicate the CTS-Manager database as running.

You can start the CTS-Manager database using the following CLI command:

#### utils service start Cisco DB

You can stop the CTS-Manager database using the following CLI command:

utils service stop Cisco DB



Use this command with extreme caution: The CTS-Manager server must be stopped before stopping the CTS-Manager database.

#### Table 13-4 CTS-Manager Database Issues

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Remote access user names cannot be created with a number.	CLI returns the following error: admin:utils remote_account create rootuser1 Executed comand unsuccessfully Invalide account name The Admin UI returns the following error: "Cisco TelePresence Manager has detected error conditions while processing your request. Code 2617 ID: REMOTE_ACCT_CREATE_ERROR Module: AUI Message: Failed to create remote account 'rootuser1'. Error: 'Invalid account name'.	Do not create user names that include a number as part of the name.

# **Multipoint Conference Unit (MCU) Issues**

CTS-Manager supports two types of MCUs, CTMS and CUVC. Table 13-5 documents any issues or anomalies between CTS-Manager and an MCU.

#### Table 13-5MCU Issues

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	<b>Recommended Action</b>
A CUVC status is always "OK".	CUVC status is not monitored by CTS-Manager.	When registering a CUVC with CTS-Manager you must manually confirm all configuration settings.
The value entered in the Max/Min Participants per Conference fields are not validated by CTS-Manager when you click the Save button.		You must manually determine and enter the correct value in these fields.

# **Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Unified CM) Issues**

#### Table 13-6 Cisco Unified CM Issues

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
The following message appears in the Support > Cisco Unified CM window "Cisco Unified CM version 6.1.1 is not supported."	CTS-Manager is running in secure mode. If Web Services Security is set to 'Secure' on the System Configuration > Security Settings window you must be running Cisco Unified CM 6.1.2 or higher to support security.	Set Web Services Security to 'Unsecure' or upgrade Cisco Unified CM to 6.1.2 or higher and run Discovery from the System Configuration > Discovery Service window.

# **Calendar Server and LDAP Interface Issues**

Status for the Calendar Server (Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino), and the LDAP server is displayed in the Dashboard window. If problems are indicated, verify the attribute mappings specified during installation CTS-Manager. See Settings in the LDAP Server window under System Configuration.



The object and attribute mappings for Exchange/Directory Server and Domino/Directory Server deployments are listed in Table 13-8 and Table 13-9 and **should not** be changed after installing and configuring Cisco TelePresence Manager.



The Object Class field and Attribute fields should not be changed. Cisco TelePresence Manager might not function properly if these fields are changed.

For deployments with multiple Directory Server deployments, LDAP uses port 3268 (the Global Catalog port) by default. For a single server deployment, port 389 is generally used, but you can reconfigure this port at the LDAP Server window under System Configuration.

### **LDAP Server Issues**

#### Table 13-7LDAP Server Issues

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Room is not sync'd between Microsoft Exchange and Cisco TelePresence Manager.		LDAP user container DN must be configured correctly for all domains.
		• LDAP field mapping should be set to default settings.

## **Microsoft Exchange Calendar Server Issues**

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Extra room has been added to a specific instance of a recurring meeting.	1. A meeting organizer schedules a recurring meeting with two or more	1. Open the R1 room calendar and delete the scheduled meeting instance.
Note This issue occurs with Exchange 2007.	<ul> <li>rooms (R1, R2 and R3).</li> <li>2. Meeting organizer deletes R1 from one instance of recurring meeting (M1).</li> <li>3. Meeting organizer adds a fourth room to master series (R4).</li> <li>4. R1 has been re-added to M1.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>2. In Cisco TelePresence Manager, go to the Configuration&gt;Microsoft Exchange window, select the checkbox next to the room and click the Re-sync button.</li> <li>Note Refer to Microsoft Knowledge Base article 949294 for more information.</li> </ul>
Room Status reports a Subscription status error or a sync error with Microsoft Exchange	A Discovery operation attempted to sync to a newly added Room calendar before even one meeting was added to the calendar.	A Room calendar must contain at least one scheduled meeting in order for Cisco TelePresence Manager to successfully subscribe and sync.
		To remove the error status:
		1. Schedule at least one meeting on the Room calendar.
		<ol> <li>From the System Configuration &gt; Microsoft Exchange window, select the room showing the subscription error and click <b>Re-sync</b>.</li> </ol>
		<ol> <li>From the Support &gt; Rooms Summary tab, select the room showing the Exchange subscription or sync error (on the Status tab), and click Update Schedule.</li> </ol>

#### Table 13-8 Microsoft Exchange Calendar Server Issues

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Room is not sync'd between Microsoft Exchange and Cisco TelePresence Manager.		• Cisco TelePresence Manager must have Full Access or Read Permission to the Room's mailbox.
		• The Room mailbox must be created with English as the default language.
		• The Room user must log into the Room mailbox at least once.
		• The Room email ID must be uniquely assigned to only one user (Room user).
		• Room's email ID must be configured correctly in Cisco Unified CM and Exchange.
		• The Cisco TelePresence System MAC address must be added to the User Profile in Unified CM.
		• Each Cisco TelePresence System may have only one corresponding IP Phone, that shares the same DN with the Cisco TelePresence System and whose MAC address has been defined in the Cisco Unified CM User Profile.
		• The Cisco TelePresence Manager's clock must be in sync with the Exchange system clock.
		• UDP port 3621 cannot be blocked by a firewall between Exchange Cisco TelePresence Manager.
		• Forms Based Authentication must not be enabled for the Exchange web site in the Exchange server that is registered with Cisco TelePresence Manager.
		• Verify the room is configured for Auto-accept, or the Room Delegate has accepted the meeting invitation.
		• At least one meeting must be scheduled on a room calendar before syncing with CTS-Manager, or CTS-Manager will return a sync error condition for the room

#### Table 13-8 Microsoft Exchange Calendar Server Issues (continued)

Proble	m or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
	Microsoft Exchange window, ng <b>Test Connection</b> returns an		Verify Exchange 2007 has a Client Access role.
			• For IIS Manager on the Exchange server, make sure <b>SSL is required</b> is not checked for the default web site when you are not using secure mode.
			• In Exchange Management Console, make sure <b>Exchange (Default</b> <b>Website)</b> is not configured with FBA.
			Note FBA must be disabled for Cisco TelePresence manager to sync meeting information with Exchange. If a new Room mailbox is added to a new Exchange server that has FBA enabled, you can either disable FBA on the second Exchange server, or use the initial Exchange server as the front-end server and point Cisco TelePresence Manager to that server.
	Scheduled Meetings window the ng Subject is deleted.	By default, the Exchange mailbox calendar attributes <b>AllBookInPolicy</b> ,	In order to display the original subject of the meeting, set <b>DeleteSubject</b> and
Note	This issue occurs with Exchange 2007.	<b>DeleteSubject</b> , and <b>AddOrganizerToSubject</b> are set to true. These attribute flags set to true delete the meeting subject and replace it with the organizer's username.	<b>AddOrganizerToSubject</b> in the room calendar mailbox setting to false.
show i	meeting email confirmation may incorrect local timezone for ng start time.	Outlook desktop does not set the meeting timezone for a single occurrence meeting.	Refer to Microsoft Knowledge Base article 925376 for more information.
	ng shows with error "waiting for nfo from Exchange".	This can be caused if OWA is used to schedule the meeting, and the meeting organizer is logged into OWA as one of	Do not use OWA to schedule a meeting if you are logging in as one of the meeting rooms included in the
Note	This issue occurs with Exchange 2007.	the rooms included in the meeting.	scheduled meeting.
CTS-M Excha	Manager cannot connect to MS nge.	The Windows logon name used to log into the MS Exchange server is different from the SMTP LHS.	In the System Configuration > Microsoft Exchange window specify both the logon name and the SMTP LHS if they are different.
			<b>Note</b> After upgrading CTS-Manager make sure both the logon name and the SMTP LHS are specified.

#### Table 13-8 Microsoft Exchange Calendar Server Issues (continued)

### **IBM Domino Calendar Server Issues**

#### Table 13-9IBM Domino Calendar Server Issues

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Failed to authenticate. Check authentication parameters. Username: short form of email address. Password: Internet password	This problem can occur when the incorrect password is specified for the Domino server, or the LDAP server configured with Domino.	Make sure the Internet password is used in the Password fields in the System Configuration> IBM Domino window and the LDAP Server window.
Room is not sync'd between Domino server and Cisco TelePresence		• The Room user must log into the Room mailbox at least once.
Manager.		• The Room email ID must be uniquely assigned to only one user (Room user).
		• Room's email ID must be configured correctly in Cisco Unified CM and Domino.
		• The Cisco TelePresence System MAC address must be added to the User Profile in Cisco Unified CM.
		• Each Cisco TelePresence System may have only one corresponding IP Phone, that shares the same DN with the Cisco TelePresence System and whose MAC address has been defined in the Cisco Unified CM User Profile.
		• The Cisco TelePresence Manager's clock must be in sync with the Domino system clock.

Problem or Message	Possible Causes	Recommended Action
Clicking <b>Test Connection</b> returns an error.		The following services should be added to the list of server tasks to load automatically when the IBM Domino servers is started:
		• RNRMGR
		• DIIOP
		• HTTP
		• LDAP
		• Router
		• Calconn
		In addition to the above services:
		• the Resource Reservations Database must be local to the Domino server
		• The Resource Reservation Database must be using the Resrc7.ntf or Resrc8.ntf template.
		• The appropriate Security Settings should be applied to the Domino server.
		• Verify the Host, Port, Organization Name, Username, and Password are correct.
		• Verify the server is reachable from the Cisco TelePresence Manager host by performing a telnet to the Domino port.
Meeting Organizer unable to log into Cisco TelePresence Manager using the link in the Action Required email.	<ul><li>Meeting Organizer is not using the internet password.</li><li>Meeting Organizer is not entering</li></ul>	• Verify the Meeting Organizer's password is set as the Domino internet password.
	their login name correctly.	• On the Cisco TelePresence Manager login page, the Meeting Organizer must enter their Username in the standard Lotus Notes format <username>/<organization name=""> (The organization name must match the value in the Organization Name field on the System Configuration &gt; IBM Domino window).</organization></username>

#### Table 13-9 IBM Domino Calendar Server Issues (continued)

## Web Browser Error Messages

The only version of Microsoft Internet Explorer supported on CTS-Manager is version 6. Use information in the following sections to help you resolve web browser problems.

- JavaScript Error Message, page 13-20
- Safe ActiveX Checking Message, page 13-20

### JavaScript Error Message

Error Message JavaScript is not enabled on this browser. Log-in is not allowed.

**Explanation** CTS-Manager must have JavaScript enabled in the web browser in order to work. Without it, the login screen will appear and users can enter a username and password, but the Login button is disabled.

**Recommended Action** Users must enable JavaScript in their web browser to log into the Cisco TelePresence Manager user interface.

To enable JavaScript, perform the following steps on Microsoft Internet Explorer:

- Step 1 Click Tools. Select Internet Options from the choices.
- Step 2 Click the Security tab.
- **Step 3** Select the zone in which the CTS-Manager server resides. This zone is usually the Local intranet.
- **Step 4** Click the Custom Level button.
- **Step 5** Scroll down to the Active scripting section and click **Enable**.
- **Step 6** Click **OK** to apply the changes.

### Safe ActiveX Checking Message

**Error Message** WARNING: Your security settings do not allow the use of safe ActiveX controls installed on your computer. Most features will not work properly.

**Explanation** CTS-Manager uses XMLHttpRequest technology. In Microsoft IE Version 6, this technology is implemented as a safe ActiveX control, and it is bundled with IE by default. However, if ActiveX controls have been disabled in the browser, CTS-Manager will not work correctly. For example, the status pane will not display any meeting counts.

**Recommended Action** Enable safe ActiveX control in the web browser so CTS-Manager works correctly.

To enable safe ActiveX control, perform the following steps on Microsoft IE Version 6:

**Step 1** Click **Tools**. Select **Internet Options** from the choices.

Click the Security tab.

Step 2

Step 3 Select the zone in which the CTS-Manager server resides. This zone is usually the Local intranet.
Step 4 Click the Custom Level button.
Step 5 Scroll down to the ActiveX controls and plug-ins section.
Step 6 Enable the following items:

Run ActiveX controls and plug-ins
Script ActiveX controls marked safe for scripting

Step 7 Click OK to apply the changes.

# **System Error Messages**

Table 13-10 lists messages that are displayed by CTS-Manager, along with possible causes and solutions for correcting the problem that caused the message.

When reading the following messages, consider that "\$1" or "\$2" are placeholder tokens. When the message actually appears in the application, the tokens will be replaced by text or a value.

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
1000	Internal server error: \$1.	A bucket for all untyped errors. The detail message would contain the actual error.	Contact support.
1001	Failed to parse config file '\$1'. Error: \$2.	The server fails to parse the config/ctis.xml configuration file. The webapp would fail to start up.	Check syntax of ctis.xml. This file should be changed by qualified technicians only. If possible, revert to its original content and restart Tomcat server. Contact support for further assistance.
1004	Version \$1 is not supported for component: \$2.	CTS-Manager does not support the version extracted from the given component.	Deploy CTS-Manager with supported versions of Exchange and LDAP only.
1005	The operation is unsupported on OS '\$1'.	The current operation is not supported on the given platform.	Contact support. Users should not see this error at all as we only deploy on Linux.
1007	Failed to restart host. Error: '\$1'.	CTS-Manager fails to restart the machine as requested. The detail message is given.	Contact support.
1008	The functionality '\$1' is not yet implemented.	The given functionality has not been implemented yet.	Upgrade CTS-Manager.
1009	Error in initialization: '\$1'.	Database maintenance manager fails to initialize due to missing scripts for either backup, purge or cron job.	Contact support. The installation process has failed.

 Table 13-10
 Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
1010	One or more arguments are null.	Exchange component is failing to test connection because one of the required parameters (host, super user account name/password, bind method) is null.	Check information provided on the Exchange configuration screen.
1011	Unable to dispatch API call.	CTS-Manager component is unable to communicate with the CTS-Manager Engine.	Check for any errors in the logfile. Contact support.
1012	Failed to shutdown host. Error: '\$1'.	The server can not be shut down due to the specified reason.	Verify that user has the right permission to shutdown the server, check for any errors in the logfile. Contact support.
1013	Failed to determine IP address of host \$1	Hostname may be incorrect	Verify hostname
1014	System service '\$1' is shutting down.	Not an error. An info message is logged indicating a system service is being shut down.	Nothing to do.
1015	Service '\$1' is started and ready to process requests.	Not an error. An info message is logged indicating a system service was started.	Nothing to do.
1016	Object class '\$1' does not have property '\$2'.	Internal programming error.Very Unlikely to happen.	Contact support.
1200	Invalid meeting. Error: Field '\$1' (\$2) is invalid.	A field in the given meeting has invalid value.	Contact support.
1201	Invalid single meeting. Error: '\$1' (\$2) is invalid.	The given meeting is not a single meeting as expected.	Contact support.
1202	Invalid master meeting. Error: '\$1' (\$2) is invalid.	The given meeting is not a master meeting as expected.	Contact support.
1203	Invalid exception meeting. Error: '\$1' (\$2) is invalid.	The given meeting is not a exception meeting as expected.	Contact support.
1204	Too many TelePresence rooms.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform meeting organizers that a meeting has more than two TelePresence rooms scheduled.	Remove extra TelePresence rooms from the meeting.
1205	Missing required number of TelePresence rooms.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform meeting organizers that a meeting has less than two TelePresence rooms scheduled.	Add another TelePresence room to the meeting, or provide a dial number using the URL in the confirmation email.
1208	Recurring meeting instance: '\$1'.	An error occurred while calculating the instances for a recurring meeting.	Contact support.
1209	Missing Conference ID and Bridge Number for the Multipoint meeting.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform meeting organizers that a multipoint meeting is missing a conference id or bridge phone number. This is an unlikely case to happen.	Verify that MCU is configured properly, and at least one is available for multipoint meeting allocation.

Table 13-10 Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued	Table 13-10
--	-------------

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
1010	One or more arguments are null.	Exchange component is failing to test connection because one of the required parameters (host, super user account name/password, bind method) is null.	Check information provided on the Exchange configuration screen.
1011	Unable to dispatch API call.	CTS-Manager component is unable to communicate with the CTS-Manager Engine.	Check for any errors in the logfile. Contact support.
1012	Failed to shutdown host. Error: '\$1'.	The server can not be shut down due to the specified reason.	Verify that user has the right permission to shutdown the server, check for any errors in the logfile. Contact support.
1013	Failed to determine IP address of host \$1	Hostname may be incorrect	Verify hostname
1014	System service '\$1' is shutting down.	Not an error. An info message is logged indicating a system service is being shut down.	Nothing to do.
1015	Service '\$1' is started and ready to process requests.	Not an error. An info message is logged indicating a system service was started.	Nothing to do.
1016	Object class '\$1' does not have property '\$2'.	Internal programming error.Very Unlikely to happen.	Contact support.
1200	Invalid meeting. Error: Field '\$1' (\$2) is invalid.	A field in the given meeting has invalid value.	Contact support.
1201	Invalid single meeting. Error: '\$1' (\$2) is invalid.	The given meeting is not a single meeting as expected.	Contact support.
1202	Invalid master meeting. Error: '\$1' (\$2) is invalid.	The given meeting is not a master meeting as expected.	Contact support.
1203	Invalid exception meeting. Error: '\$1' (\$2) is invalid.	The given meeting is not a exception meeting as expected.	Contact support.
1204	Too many TelePresence rooms.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform meeting organizers that a meeting has more than two TelePresence rooms scheduled.	Remove extra TelePresence rooms from the meeting.
1205	Missing required number of TelePresence rooms.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform meeting organizers that a meeting has less than two TelePresence rooms scheduled.	Add another TelePresence room to the meeting, or provide a dial number using the URL in the confirmation email.
1208	Recurring meeting instance: '\$1'.	An error occurred while calculating the instances for a recurring meeting.	Contact support.
1209	Missing Conference ID and Bridge Number for the Multipoint meeting.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform meeting organizers that a multipoint meeting is missing a conference id or bridge phone number. This is an unlikely case to happen.	Verify that MCU is configured properly, and at least one is available for multipoint meeting allocation.

Table 13-10	Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)
-------------	---

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
1210	Missing required number of TelePresence rooms for the Multipoint meeting.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform schedulers that a meeting has less number of rooms than what is required for a multipoint meeting. This is an unlikely case to happen.	Contact support.
1211	Selected TelePresence rooms are incompatible for multiroom conference. Contact help desk.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform schedulers that a meeting is scheduled with room(s) that can not support multipoint conference.	Check the version of TelePresence equipment of each room and verify that it is a version which can support multipoint meeting. Upgrade if necessary.
1212	Insufficient resources to setup multiroom conference. Contact help desk.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform schedulers that there is no available MCU for a multipoint meeting.	Verify that MCU is configured properly, and at least one is available for multipoint meeting allocation. Add a new MCU if necessary, or reschedule the meeting to a different time.
1213	Resources not setup to support multiroom conference. Contact help desk.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform schedulers that there is no MCU configured for a multipoint meeting.	Verify that MCU is configured properly, and at least one is available for multipoint meeting allocation. Add a new MCU if necessary.
1214	Scheduler does not have enough privileges to setup this TelePresence meeting. Contact help desk.	Used by Exchange component in its email notification to inform schedulers that they don't have enough privilege for scheduling a multipoint meeting.	Verify that the scheduler has been assigned with the required user privilege. Add the scheduler to the user group that has the required privilege if necessary.
1215	Resource allocation error. \$1	There is not enough resource available to migrate all meetings from one MCU to another MCU.	Verify that the target MCU has the proper configuration and that it is available.
1216	Meeting migration error. \$1	An error occurred when attempting to migrate meetings from one MCU to another MCU	Check the error message in the logfile. Contact support.
1217	Insufficient Video Conferencing resources to setup multipoint conference.	There are not enough Video Conferencing resources available to have a Video Conferencing meeting.	Reduce the number of Video Conference participants or increase the number of Video Conferencing resources on the Video Conferencing MCU.
1221	Bulk execution failed	Some meetings update failed.	Contact Support.
1222	Failed to load/parse time zone map file '\$1'. Error: \$2.	The time zone map file maps a user calendaring time zone (from either Exchange or Domino) to a system time zone. The time zone map file is timezonemap.xml under /usr/local/ctis/config. The error would indicate the actual message in the Error portion of the message.	An internal error. Something has occurred during system installation or upgrade. Contact support.

Table 13-10	Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
1223	Unknown time zone target '\$1'.	The time zone map file maps a user calendaring time zone (from either Exchange or Domino) to a system time zone. The time zone map file is timezonemap.xml under /usr/local/ctis/config. The error is indicating that a system time zone in the mapping is wrong.	An internal error. Something has occurred during system installation or upgrade. Contact support.
1225	Unable to find a matching time zone target time zone definition ID: '\$1', Descriptor: '\$2', Definition: '\$3'.	CTS-Manager fails to recognize the user time zone passed from the calendaring application.	Contact support with the error message so that the time zone mapping file can be updated and patched.
1226	A unique conference ID is not available in the requested time window.	All the Video Conferencing Access Numbers exhausted in this time slot.	Modify the meeting to use another time slot and try to convert the meeting to a Video Conferencing meeting.
1227	Duplicate room entries found in Cisco Unified CM.	Two CTS devices have same email address configured in Cisco Unified CM.	Correct the email address and make it unique for the devices having same email address.
1400	Fail to \$1 concierge. Error: \$2.	CTS-Manager fails to perform the given operation for a concierge. The detail error message is given.	Most likely real cause would be DB operation error. DB might be down. Contact support.
1401	This device has \$1 future meetings scheduled. Please migrate the meetings to another device first and try again.	Selected MCU has some future meetings scheduled and therefore it can't be deleted.	Migrate the meetings from the MCU (to be deleted) to another MCU and try the deletion again.
1402	A device with hostname \$1 already exists. Please use a different hostname and try again.	A device with the same hostname and/or IP address already exists, therefore it doesn't allow the addition of the new device.	Check the hostname configuration for any conflict. Correct it and try the addition again.
1403	Duplicate entry. \$1 already exists.Please use a different name and try again.	A configuration entry with the same value already exists, therefore it doesn't allow the addition of the new entry.	Check the entry value uniqueness to make sure it does not have any conflict with any existing configuration. Correct it and try the addition again.
1405	Failed to enable Interoperability support. Error: \$1.	User operation of enabling Interoperability support has failed.	Most likely cause is the Cisco TelePresence Engine server process is not running. Verify its status using CLI command. Contact support if unable to start this server process.
1406	Failed to disable Interoperability support. Error: \$1.	User operation of disabling Interoperability support has failed.	Most likely cause is the Cisco TelePresence Engine server process is not running. Verify its status using CLI command. Contact support if unable to start this server process.
1408	Managed CTMS is not Interop capable. Cannot enable Interop support.	The managed CTMS does not support Video Conferencing Interoperability.	Upgrade the CTMS to a version that supports Interoperability with Video Conference.

#### Table 13-10 Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
1409	Managed CTS is not Interop capable, cannot enable Interop support.	The managed CTS does not support Video Conferencing Interoperability.	Upgrade the CTS to a version that supports Interoperability with Video Conference.
1410	Cannot disable Interoperability support when there exists an Interoperability MCU.	CTS-Manager does not allow disabling of Video Conferencing Interoperability if there is a Video Conferencing MCU configured in the system.	Delete the Video Conferencing MCU and try disabling Interoperability support.
1411	Only one CUVC is allowed in system.	CTS-Manager allows only one CUVC.	If a new CUVC must be added, first remove the existing CUVC.
1412	Room \$1 does not support Interoperability. Groupware subscription will be denied.	While Video Conferencing Interoperability is enabled a managed CTS is downgraded to not support Interoperability.	Upgrade the CTS to a version that supports Interoperability with Video Conference.
1601	Failed to authenticate. Check authentication parameters.	Self-explanatory.	Check user name and password and try again.
1602	Unsupported authentication type '\$1'.	The authentication specified during configuration (e.g.: for LDAP against Directory Server) is not supported.	Contact support.
1603	Error during encryption: '\$1'.	An error occurred while encrypting a string. The detail error message is given.	Contact support.
1604	Error during decryption: '\$1'.	An error occurred while decrypting a string. The detail error message is given.	Contact support.
1605	Insufficient credential '\$1'. Requires credential '\$2'.	User does not have sufficient privilege to access an URL.	Obtain correct credential and try again.
1606	Access permitted to email ID '\$1' only.	Only scheduler is permitted to access the URL given in the email notification. Any other user trying to log in will be rejected with this error.	Use scheduler's credential to log in.
1607	New password is too simple. New password should contain both mixed-case alphabetic and non-alphabetic characters. It should not base on common words found in dictionary.	Self-explanatory. Happened when user changes super user password.	Use better formed password and try again.
1608	Password was change successfully, but could not be saved for future upgrade.	Could not save new password to platformConfig.xml due to some internal error.	Contact support.
1609	Could not change password: current password does not match.	Users must enter the old password correctly before they are allowed to change to new password.	Enter the correct old password.
1611	Unable to find username '\$1' in the directory	Incorrect username specified in login screen	Enter correct username

Table 13-10 Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
1612	Failed to authenticate.Check authentication parameters.Username:LHS of email address.Password:AD password	CTS-Manager superuser account credentials inside MS-Exchange are invalid	Enter correct username/password
1613	Failed to authenticate.Check authentication parameters.Username:short form of email address.Password:Internet password.	CTS-Manager superuser account credentials inside IBM-Domino are invalid	Enter correct username/password
1700	Unknown configuration component '\$1'.	Configuration for the specified component does not exist.	Ensure that the first time configuration setup is done and all the values are properly specified.
1701	No parameter '\$1' found under configuration component '\$2'.	Specific configuration parameter for a component does not exist in stored configuration.	Ensure that the first time configuration setup is done and all the values are properly specified.
1702	Failed to set parameter '\$1' to value '\$2'. Error: '\$3'.	CTS-Manager is unable to save the given parameter due to the given detail error message. This is likely to be caused by DB error.	Check DB component status using CLI command. Restart it if necessary. Restart Tomcat after DB is running.
1703	Failed to update schedule to rooms '\$1'. Error: '\$2'.	CTS-Manager fails to submit a schedule update request to the given rooms.	Check room equipment and try again.
1704	Failed to validate DN '\$1'.	CTS-Manager fails to validate specified DB in LDAP directory	Check DN configuration.
1705	Failed to validate email '\$1'. The specified email does not exist	Extra email address specified under custom settings is not valid	Correct email address in specified field
1901	Failed to authenticate the TB device:	Username/password does not match for Telepresence Equipment	1. Configure username/password in Cisco Unified CM for specified telepresence equipment.
			2. Run Cisco Unified CM Discovery for SR to sync configured username/password.
1902	Failed to send message to the TB device:	Could not deliver updated calendar to Telepresence Equipment due to loss of connectivity	<ol> <li>Verify if Telepresence equipment is registered with Cisco Unified CM.</li> <li>If Telepresence Equipment is not registered inside, contact Cisco TAC</li> </ol>
1903	No Communication link on TB:	Web Service on TelepresenceEquipment is not running	1. Use Telepresence Equipment Troubleshooting guide to ensure the webservice is running
1904	Failed to update the SSH username/password from DB into cache.	Failed to retrieve SSH username password from DB	1. Use trouble shooting section to verify database connectivity

Table 13-10	Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)
-------------	---

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
2000	Data Access Error: \$1.	General error in data access operations	Look into the specific error message. Based on the message, verify if database is running, verify using 'Test Connection' if Directory Server is running, troubleshoot the specific message.
2001	Metaschema Parsing Error: \$1.	An error occurred while parsing metaschema file.	Ensure that the installation and first time configuration has completed successfully.
2002	Error loading Metaschema file: \$1.	The metaschema file is not loaded.	Ensure that the installation and first time configuration has completed successfully. Ensure that the disk is not corrupted.
2003	Datastore '\$1' not found in Metaschema file.	Datastore values are not proper in metaschema file.	Ensure that the installation and first time configuration has completed successfully.
2004	Error updating override metaschema file.	Unable to write the values specified in the FieldMapping tab to the metaschema file.	Ensure that the installation and first time configuration has completed successfully. Ensure that the values specified in the FieldMappings tab are valid.
2005	Data Access Initialization Error: \$1.	An error occurred during data access plugins initialization.	Evaluate specific message and troubleshoot database, LDAP connectivity and first time setup.
2006	Error in object creation: \$1.	An error occurred during object creation in the database.	Evaluate object to be created and troubleshoot based on specific message.
2007	Error during object write: \$1.	An error occurred during object update in the database.	Evaluate object to be updated and troubleshoot based on specific message.
2008	Error during object delete: \$1.	An error occurred during object deletion in the database.	Evaluate object to be deleted and troubleshoot based on specific message.
2009	Error during object get: \$1.	An error occurred during object retrieval from the database.	Evaluate object to be retrieved and troubleshoot based on specific message.
2010	Specified object '\$1' not found in '\$2' datastore.	The specified object does not exist in the data store	Evaluate object to be retrieved and troubleshoot based on specific message.
2011	Invalid Parameter Specified: '\$1'.	The specified parameter is not valid.	Contact support.
2012	Error in Data Purge.	Error in Data Purge.	Evaluate message and contact support.
2013	Error in Data Backup.	Error in Data Backup.	Evaluate message and contact support.
2014	Error in Data Restore.	Error in Data Restore.	Evaluate message and contact support.

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
2015	Error in DB Maintenance Operations.	Error during database maintenance operation (Backup/Restore/Purge)	This is an error which is not handled by the categories mentioned above. Evaluate specific message and contact support.
2016	Error returned by spawned process: \$1.	Error returned by script spawned by the server Java process	Evaluate the specific message. Contact support if required.
2017	Error acquiring connection: \$1.	Error in getting a connection from connection pool	Check connection type (DB/LDAP) and verify connectivity. If problem persists, may require server restart. Contact support.
2018	Error closing connection: \$1.	Error in closing a connection from connection pool	This may not be severe, but needs to be monitored. Check connection type (DB/LDAP) and verify connectivity. If problem persists, may require server restart. Contact support.
2019	Error closing statement: \$1.	Error in closing a JDBC SQL statement object.	This may not be severe, but needs to be monitored. Check if database is running.
2020	Error instantiating class: \$1.	Error in using pluggable methods during data access operations	Ensure the installation and first time setup is properly completed. This may be resolved by server restart. Contact support before doing this.
2021	Error instantiating method '\$1' for class: '\$2'.	Error in using pluggable methods during data access operations	Ensure the installation and first time setup is properly completed. This may be resolved by server restart. Contact support before doing this.
2022	Error retrieving field '\$1' for class: '\$2'.	Error in using pluggable methods during data access operations	Ensure the installation and first time setup is properly completed. This may be resolved by server restart. Contact support before doing this.
2023	Error setting value for field '\$1' for class: '\$2'.	Error in using pluggable methods during data access operations	Ensure the installation and first time setup is properly completed. This may be resolved by server restart. Contact support before doing this.
2024	Specified object '\$1' is already deleted.	An object specified to be deleted is already deleted.	This is a warning to be monitored. Contact support.
2025	Object handler not found for specified object: '\$1'.	The object handler for data access operations is not found.	This is a fatal error. Contact support.
2027	Attribute '\$1' was not retrieved.	The requested attribute is not found in the object, either because application does not retrieve all the attributes for the object or it does not use the correct attribute name.	This is a severe error, but need not be fatal. Contact support.
2301	Unknown object interface '\$1'.	An object specified is not accessible anymore.	This is a severe error, but need not be fatal. Contact support.

Table 13-10	Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)
-------------	---

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
2302	The parameter '\$1' with value '\$2' is not valid.	Specified value for a parameter is not valid.	Evaluate the parameter. If it is a configurable parameter, ensure proper value is specified.
2400	Failed to connect to Cisco Unified CM. Error: \$1	Failure in retrieving information from Cisco Unified CM.	Cisco AXL WebService should be in running state.
2401	Failed to authenticate into Cisco Unified CM: Error: \$1.	No Digital certificate found in truststore.	Upload updated Digital cert for Cisco Unified CM.
2402	Failed to locate attached phone to TelePresence device.	No Phone configured on shared line with telepresence equipment.	Configure shared line with IP Phone.
2403	Failed to locate room information attached to TelePresence equipment.	Missing Room information for Telepresence Equipment.	Configure Room information using steps specified in CTS-Manager Configuration guide
2404	Failed to send AXL Message to Cisco Unified CM. Error: \$1.	Failure in sending information request to Cisco Unified CM.	1. Fix the certificate.
	Cisco Onnieu CM. Enor. \$1.	1. Incorrect digital certificate is uploaded.	2. Correct Cisco Unified CM AppUser credentials.
		2. Incorrect credentials specified in Cisco Unified CM Application user.	
2405	Failed to retrieve publisher and/or subscriber nodes.	Failure in discovering Cisco Unified CM Node information from DB.	<ol> <li>Use compatible Cisco Unified CM version.</li> <li>Publisher node hostname should be</li> </ol>
		1. Incompatible Cisco Unified CM version	used.
		2. Specified Node is not a Cisco Unified CM publisher.	
2406	Failed to authenticate and	Invalid credentials and/or hostname.	1. Correct App User credentials and
	connect with Cisco Unified CM '\$1'. Error: \$2.	1. Incorrect Cisco Unified CM App User credentials	publisher node configuration.
		2. Incorrect publisher node hostname is specified.	
2407	Failed to create CTI Adapter to Unified CM '\$1'. Error: \$2.	Failure in authenticating and connecting with CTIManager.	1. Verify Cisco Unified CM App User credentials
			2. Verify CTIManager service is activated on the publisher node.
2409	Failed to create or update TelePresence equipment information.	Failure in creating Telepresence Equipment in DB.	1. Ensure DN is configured.
2411	CTI Manager on Cisco Unified CM is down.	Failure in creating provider instance.	1. CTIManager is not running.

Table 13-10	Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)
-------------	---

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
2415	Failed to connect to RIS Manager.	Failure in retrieving ip address from CiscoUnified CM.	1. SOAP Webservice for RIS should be running.
			2. Check Cisco Unified CM AppUser has correct privileges.
2418	Failed to get list of addresses from CTI Provider.	Cisco Unified CM CTI Provider in error state.	Contact Cisco TAC for Unified CM issues.
2419	Failed to retrieve IP Address for requested device.	Cisco Unified CM RIS WebService is not running.	Active SOAP webservice.
2420	Failed to discovery TelePresence equipment.	One of the Unified CM interface is down.	Contact Cisco TAC for Unified CM issues.
2422	Directory number is not configured.	Directory number is not configured.	Configure Directory number.
2423	Incompatible Cisco Unified CM Configured. Please verify the supported Unified CM version inside Supported versions table.	Incompatible Cisco Unified CM version.	Correct Cisco Unified CM version.
2424	Failure inside scheduled maintenance operation.	Execution of scheduled maintenance for Database or TelepresenceEquipment Discovery or Exchange sync or Calendar schedule push failed.	Contact Cisco TAC for detailed investigation.
2425	Failed to discover timezone information from Cisco Unified CM.	TimeZone information not configured or available in Cisco Unified CM.	Contact Cisco TAC for Cisco Unified CM issues.
2426	Failed to discover telepresence capability information from endpoints.	Failure in discovering capability information from Telepresence equipment endpoints. It is most likely due to an older version of the Telepresence equipment not having the support for capability information.	Check the version of Telepresence equipment, and upgrade to a later version if necessary.
2427	More than one IP Phone configured on shared DN with telepresence equipment.	There is more than one IP phones that share the same DN as the specified Telepresence equipment endpoint.	Remove extra IP Phones or assign them with new DN, such that the Telepresence equipment endpoint only has one IP phone sharing its DN.
2428	CTI Control is disabled for the IP Phone.	The specified Cisco IP Phone that is configured for the Telepresence equipment endpoint is not set with CTI control enabled.	Verify the IP phone configuration in Unified CM Admin, and configure it to allow CTI control.
2429	Failed to update time zone '\$1'. Error: \$2.	An internal server error.	Contact support.
2430	CTS device '\$1' does not support Interoperability.	The CTS does not support Video Conferencing Interoperability.	Upgrade the CTS to a version that supports Interoperability with Video Conference.

Table 13-10	Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)
-------------	---

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
2500	Failed to send message/event.	ActiveMQ message system is failing.	Contact Cisco TAC for detailed investigation.
2601	Error getting detail for meeting ID '\$1'.	CTS-Manager fails to extract meeting detail because either the scheduler ID or the meeting serial ID is null.	Check the URL that is provided in the email notification. The URL cannot be altered in anyway.
2602	Error getting certificate configuration file '\$1'.	The cert-conf.xml does not exist under catalina.home. Something occurred during installation.	Contact support.
2603	Error loading certificate named: '\$1'.	CTS-Manager fails to load the given certificate into the system.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
2604	Error deleting certificate unit '\$1' of category '\$2'. Error: '\$3'.	CTS-Manager fails to delete the given cert.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
2605	Error \$1 DHCP setting. CLI error code: \$2.	CTS-Manager fails to enable/disable DHCP setting. Detail error message is given.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
2606	Error setting IP address and/or subnet mask. CLI error code: \$1.	CTS-Manager fails to set new IP settings.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
2607	Error setting default gateway. CLI error code: \$1.	CTS-Manager fails to change default gateway setting.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
2608	Error setting SNMP data. Command executed: '\$1'. Error: '\$2'.	CTS-Manager fails to execute SNMP setting script to set new SNMP setting.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
2609	Failed to '\$1' SNMP service. Error: '\$2'.	CTS-Manager fails to use ControlCenter to perform the given action on SNMP daemon.	Try to use CLI to activate/deactivate SNMP service. Contact support.
2610	Software upgrade already in progress.	Users attempt to start another software upgrade while there is an upgrade going on. There can be only one upgrade at any time.	Wait until the current upgrade completes and try again.
2611	Failed to upgrade software. Error: '\$1'.	CTS-Manager fails to upgrade software due to the given error message.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
2612	System is restarting. Try again later.	The system is being restarted. Users are disallowed to log in while the system is being restarted.	Wait a few minutes and try to log in again.
2613	Webapp home directory '\$1' does not exist.	The webapp directory does not exist. Something has occurred during installation.	Users should not see this error. Contact support.
2614	System is being maintained. Try again later.	Either a database restore or system restart is in progress. Users are prevented from logging in, and this error is shown on the log-in page.	Wait a few minutes and try to log in again.
2615	Cannot delete own role mapping: '\$1'.	Users whose role is Administrator is trying to delete his own role mapping on the Access Management screen.	Users cannot delete his own role mapping. Super User can delete anything.

Table 13-10	Cisco TelePresence	Manager Error	Messages	(continued)
		manager Enor	messages	(continucu)

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
2616	FQDN '\$1' is not a group FQDN.	Users enter an invalid user FQDN in the Role to LDAP mapping dialog box (during Access Management configuration).	Check the entered FQDN and try again.
2617	Failed to create remote account '\$1'. Error: '\$2'. Account name must contain only lower case alphabetic characters. Upper case, digit, and special characters are not allowed.	CTS-Manager fails to create the requested remote account. Detail error message is given.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
2618	Cannot view more than one meeting in the same session. Log out of session on meeting '\$1' first.	Viewing more than one meeting in the same UI session is not allowed.	Log out of the session on the other meeting first and try again.
2619	Server is being restarted. Try again later.	An attempt to view the UI while server is being restarted.	Wait a few minutes and try to log in again.
2620	Email ID '\$1' specified in URL is different than ID '\$2' found in database.	The URL that is used to view a meeting contains a different user ID than the meeting scheduler. This request will be blocked with this error shown in the UI.	Make sure the user uses the exact same URL that is provided in the CTS-MAN generated email. After verifying the URL, if it still fails, contact support. In CTS-MAN 1.1, this could occur when switching between versions.
2621	Missing required URL parameter '\$1'. Contact Administrator.	The URL that is used to view a meeting is missing a required parameter to retrieve the meeting information.	Make sure the user uses the exact same URL that is provided in the CTS-MAN generated email. After verifying the URL, if it still fails, contact support.
2622	Error setting primary DNS. CLI error code: \$1	Failed to set requested primary DNS on the platform, CLI returned an error	Verify DNS name again
2623	Error setting secondary DNS. CLI error code: \$1	Failed to set requested secondary DNS on the platform, CLI returned an error	Verify DNS name again
2624	Duplicate entry. Role '\$1' for this Group FQDN already exists	Duplicate name specified for a rile.	Verify the role name again
2626	Error setting Domain. CLI error code: \$1.	Failed to set the domain name	Refer to Domino installation and verify domain name
2627	Error deleting the primary DNS. CLI error code: \$1	Failed to delete the DNS name, CLI returned an error	Contact Cisco TAC for detailed investigation.
2628	Error deleting the secondary DNS. CLI error code: \$1	Failed to delete the DNS name, CLI returned an error	Contact Cisco TAC for detailed investigation.
2629	Invalid certificate type named: '\$1'.Valid Certificate file extensions .cer and .der.	Incorrect cert file is used	Self explanatory
2630	Meeting query results in more than max \$1 instances. Change search criteria and try again.	User has requested more than max allowed meetings inside meetings view.	Change search criteria to narrow down the number of meetings inside meetings view.

Table 13-10	Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)
-------------	---

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
2632	Failed to enable Interoperability. Some devices do not support Interoperability. Click on the links to view the error devices.	At least a CTS or CTMS does not support Interoperability. Enabling Video Conferencing Interoperability support requires all CTS and CTMS support Interoperability.	Upgrade the CTS or CTMS that does not support Interoperability to a version that supports Interoperability.
2633	Error updating meeting. Meeting ID not found '\$1'.	The meeting does not exist in the CTS-Manager. It was possibly deleted after the meeting is displayed on the UI.	Refresh the Admin UI web page. If the meeting still exists and the problem persists, contact support.
2644	Failed to enable Intercompany. One or more occurrences have Video Conferencing enabled.	The recurrent meeting has one or more instances as interop meeting.	Change the interop instances to be normal or non-interop meetings and then try to make the meeting as an intercompany meeting.
2700	Failed to display requested certificate :	Invalid Certificate	Reload a new certificate and try again.
2803	Error during configuration policy delete: \$1.	Failed to delete configuration policy	Contact Cisco TAC for detailed investigation.
2808	A configuration policy with this policy name \$1 already exists.	Duplicate name specified for a policy	Self explanatory
3001	Unable to start adapter '\$1'. Error: '\$2'.	CTS-Manager fails to start one of its client adapters. The adapter name and detail message is given.	This is a fatal error. Contact support.
3002	Failed to sync '\$1'.	CTS-Manager fails to perform synchronization for the given Exchange room or database.	Using the Exchange or Domino configuration UI, try to manually start the sync for the given room or database. If unsuccessful then contact support.
3003	Failed to process meeting '\$1'.	CTS-Manager fails to process a meeting with given subject or system ID.	Update the meeting using the calendaring tool (Outlook or Lotus Notes) to see if the meeting can be processed again. Contact support.
3004	Failed to update room '\$1'.	CTS-Manager fails to update some information on the given room.	Contact support.
3005	Failed to process '\$1' event for room '\$2'.	CTS-Manager fails to process a specific room event.	Contact support.
3100	Unexpected Error: \$1.	CTS-Manager Exchange Adapter has encountered internal error.	Contact Cisco TAC for detailed investigation.
3101	Missing Config Param Error: \$1.	Required configuration parameter is missing.	Specify the required parameter and retry operation.
3102	Exchange Connection Error: \$1.	Connection to Exchange could not be established.	Make sure specified connection are correct, Exchange host is reachable.
3103	Param Format Error: \$1. Given value:(\$2).	Specified Exchange Adapter parameter format is incorrect.	Correct the parameter based on message and retry operation.

**Recommended Actions** 

Code

Message

Loae	wessage	Explanation	Recommended Actions
3105	Room Subscription Error: Room:(\$1). Message:(\$2)	Room account does not exist in AD/Exchange, CTS-Manager account does not have proper permission to read room calendar, connection to Exchange might be down, room account on Exchange modified.	Setup room account in AD/Exchange, give CTS-Manager account read access to room's calendar, wait for CTS-Manager to regain connection to Exchange else restart CTS-Manager.
3106	Room Unsubscription Error: Room:(\$1). Message:(\$2)	Connection to Exchange might be down, room account on Exchange modified.	Wait for CTS-Manager to regain connection to Exchange else restart CTS-Manager.
3107	Room Search Error: Room:(\$1). Message:(\$2)	Connection to Exchange might be down, room account on Exchange modified.	Wait for CTS-Manager to regain connection to Exchange else restart CTS-Manager.
3109	Room Renewal Error: Room:(\$1). Message:(\$2)	Connection to Exchange might be down, room account on Exchange modified.	Wait for CTS-Manager to regain connection to Exchange else restart CTS-Manager.
3111	Lock Error: Cannot acquire lock on element:(\$1).	Error in resolving deadlocks in server application threads.	This is a severe error, but need not be fatal. Contact support.
3112	Mailbox Error: Error during mailbox size computation:(\$1).	CTS-Manager is unable to read mailbox quota.	Specify specific mailbox quota for CTS-Manager account in Directory Server.
3113	Mailbox Quota Error: Cleanup account on Exchange. Quota:(\$1) Current size:(\$2).	Super user mailbox has filled up to the quota.	Cleanup super user account on Exchange.
3114	Invalid Domain Name	The specified domain name is invalid. Users would see this error during Test Connection of Exchange settings.	Correct the domain name and try Test Connection again.
3115	Invalid User Name. User name cannot contain space(s).	Invalid User Name. Exchange user name cannot contain space(s).	Correct the user name.
3116	Exchange connection succeeded	Not an error condition.	
3501	Email cannot be sent for meeting in validation state '\$1'.	Internal error.	Contact support.
3502	Unknown email request '\$1'.	Internal error	Contact support
3503	Invalid meeting scheduler (subject '\$1'). Error: field '\$2' has invalid value '\$3'.	Internal error	Contact support
3504	Discarded email request '\$1' after '\$2' attempts.	CTS-Manager has attempted too many times to send email for a meeting but all have failed.	Contact support
3505	Too many email requests submitted for ID '\$1'.	CTS-Manager under possible DoS attack. Too many email requests for the same meeting are being submitted.	Contact support
3601	Room display segments information is missing.	Room does not have any display segment information.	This is a severe error, but it should never happen. Contact support.

#### Table 13-10 Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)

Explanation

Code	Message	Explanation	Recommended Actions
3800	MCU is not reachable:	CTS-Manager is unable to communicate with the MCU	Check for any connectivity issue and check the MCU status.
3801	Failed to authenticate with MCU:	MCU is unable to find CTS-Manager hostname/IP address or unable to authenticate the CTS-Manager, therefore it will not process any request from this CTS-Manager.	Verify that the MCU is configured properly with the correct CTS-Manager settings.
3802	An error occurred at MCU:	MCU has reported an error. The error detail is given in the message.	Take corrective action according to the detail message and try again.
3803	MCU failed to authenticate:	CTS-Manager is unable to authenticate the MCU, therefore it will not process any request from this MCU	Verify that the authentication information that are entered in CTS-Manager and MCU match.
3804	HostName or IP Address not found for MCU:	MCU is unknown to CTS-Manager, therefore it will not process any request from this MCU	Verify that this MCU is configured properly in CTS-Manager.
3805	CTMS '\$1' does not support Interoperability.	The CTMS does not support Interoperability.	Upgrade the CTMS to a version that supports Interoperability.
3806	A meeting '\$1' has error. Meeting is not pushed to MCU '\$2'.	Meeting does not have the required information.	Contact Support.
4000	Domino Connection Error: \$1.	Failed to connect to Domino server	Verify IP connectivity to Domino server, DIIOP task should be running
4001	Domino connection was established, but couldn't open the specified Domino resource database	Domino resource may be inaccessible for various reasons.	Contact Cisco TAC for detailed investigation.
4002	Domino Domain value '\$1' specified is not correct.	Domino domain value is incorrect	Verify if Domino domain name is correct or has changed

 Table 13-10
 Cisco TelePresence Manager Error Messages (continued)